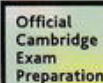


 **CAMBRIDGE**

Official
Cambridge
Exam
Preparation

PREPARE

STUDENT'S BOOK

A2

LEVEL 2

**Joanna Kosta
Melanie Williams**

**Second
Edition**

PREPARE

STUDENT'S BOOK

**Joanna Kosta
Melanie Williams**

**Second
Edition**

A2

LEVEL 2

CONTENTS

0	Get started	10
1	Sports and games	14
2	This is my day	18
	CULTURE The Paralympic Games	22
3	Great sounds	24
4	It was awesome!	28
	LIFE SKILLS Collaboration: Reaching agreement	32
	REVIEW 1	34
5	Moments in history	36
6	What a great job!	40
	CULTURE Saturday jobs	44
7	An exciting trip	46
8	Favourite places	50
	LIFE SKILLS Physical well-being: Safety at home	54
	REVIEW 2	56
9	Clothes and fashion	58
10	Buying things	62
	CULTURE Shopping	66
11	Eating out	68
12	The latest technology	72
	LIFE SKILLS ICT literacy: Writing a blog	76
	REVIEW 3	78
13	Healthy bodies	80
14	Getting around town	84
	CULTURE Scotland	88
15	Mysteries in nature	90
16	Amazing animals	94
	LIFE SKILLS Social responsibility: Protecting animals	98
	REVIEW 4	100
17	What are you watching?	102
18	Magazines and books	106
	CULTURE British TV around the world	110
19	School can be fun!	112
20	Families	116
	LIFE SKILLS Emotional skills: Being a good friend	120
	REVIEW 5	122
	Extra activities	124
	Vocabulary list	127
	Grammar reference and practice	137
	List of irregular verbs	158

UNIT	VOCABULARY	GRAMMAR	READING
0 GET STARTED! page 10	Things in the classroom Numbers Dates	Verb <i>be</i> <i>there is / there are</i> <i>have got</i> <i>can</i> Present simple	
1 SPORTS AND GAMES page 14	Sports ə /ei/ and /aɪ/ Sports equipment	Adverbs of frequency	Teenblog: Sport Try these sports!
2 THIS IS MY DAY page 18	Daily routines Food ə The sound /ə/	Present continuous and simple	✔ Tell us about your day ...
Culture The Paralympic Games page 22			
3 GREAT SOUNDS page 24	Music Music phrases	<i>like, don't like, hate, love</i> + <i>-ing</i> ✔ Talking about music	Starting in the music business
4 IT WAS AWESOME! page 28	Adjectives Emotions	Past simple of <i>be</i> ə <i>was/were</i>	Activity days – latest reviews
Life Skills Collaboration: Reaching agreement page 32			
Review 1 Units 1–4 page 34			
5 MOMENTS IN HISTORY page 36	Historical events Buildings	Dates with <i>in</i> and <i>on</i> Past simple: regular verbs ə Past simple <i>-ed</i>	Women in history The Great Fire
6 WHAT A GREAT JOB! page 40	Jobs ə Three-syllable words Work	Past simple: negatives and questions	50 weeks, 50 states, 50 different jobs ✔ Students at work!
Culture Saturday jobs page 44			
7 AN EXCITING TRIP page 46	Holidays (1) Holidays (2) ə Sounds and spelling	Past simple: irregular verbs	Crossing the world on a rickshaw to see the Olympics
8 FAVOURITE PLACES page 50	Bedroom furniture ə /ɜ:/ and /ɔ:/ Free-time activities	<i>someone, anyone</i> , etc. ✔ Signs, notices and messages	Everyone needs a favourite place Artists' favourite places to work
Life Skills Physical well-being: Safety at home page 54			
Review 2 Units 5–8 page 56			
9 CLOTHES AND FASHION page 58	Clothes Materials ə Words beginning with /s/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/	Pronouns and determiners	What's your best buy? They're made of ... what?
10 BUYING THINGS page 62	Buying and selling Phrases with <i>for</i>	<i>some, any, a lot of, a few, a bit of</i> ə Weak forms: /ə/	What kind of shopper are you? Two young entrepreneurs to watch
Culture Shopping page 66			

LISTENING	SPEAKING	WRITING	VIDEO
	Classroom language Ask and answer questions about personal details ☞ The alphabet		
An interview about an unusual sport	Talking about sports		
A description of a morning routine Interviews about getting up in the morning		A paragraph about your routine	
			▶ Paralympic athletes
A conversation about music and musical instruments A conversation about a music school ☞ Email addresses, phone numbers and names	✔ Giving opinions about music and musical instruments		▶ Great Sounds
Conversations about experiences ✔ Five short conversations		A description of a party	
An interview about a moment in history	Giving a presentation about a moment in history		
A conversation about work experience		A paragraph about work	▶ Jobs
			▶ Summer camp
A conversation about holidays A description of a journey	Telling a travel story		▶ Holidays
Descriptions of favourite places		A description of a favourite place	
Descriptions of unusual things to use to make clothes	Describing what someone is wearing		
✔ Five short conversations		A story about a problem buying something online	
			▶ Street fairs everywhere

UNIT	VOCABULARY	GRAMMAR	READING
11 EATING OUT page 68	Food (1) Food (2) Ə /ʌ/ and /ɒ/	as ... as Comparative adjectives	Menus Street food around the world
12 THE LATEST TECHNOLOGY page 72	Technology Computers and the internet	Superlative adjectives Ə Stress in superlatives	Did you know ...? The history of computers
Life Skills ICT literacy: Writing a blog page 76			
Review 3 Units 9–12 page 78			
13 HEALTHY BODIES page 80	Illness Health	should/shouldn't Ə Silent consonants	What is so great about running?
14 GETTING AROUND TOWN page 84	Places in town Compound nouns Ə Compound nouns	Prepositions	A description of a town A trip to Edinburgh
Culture Scotland page 88			
15 MYSTERIES IN NATURE page 90	Geographical features The weather	Past continuous Ə Rising and falling intonation	Is the story real? Loch Ness
16 AMAZING ANIMALS page 94	Animals Phrasal verbs Ə /u:/ and /ʊ/	Past simple and past continuous	Bear to the rescue ✔ Our animal friends
Life Skills Social responsibility: Protecting animals page 98			
Review 4 Units 13–16 page 100			
17 WHAT ARE YOU WATCHING? page 102	Television Entertainment	Future with <i>going to</i> Ə <i>Going to</i>	Talent shows
18 MAGAZINES AND BOOKS page 106	Magazines <i>as, because, so</i> and <i>when</i>	Making suggestions Ə Intonation	Read and Review
Culture British TV around the world page 110			
19 SCHOOL CAN BE FUN! page 112	Trip activities School collocations	<i>have to / don't have to</i> Ə <i>have to / has to</i>	The flipped classroom – what's it all about?
20 FAMILIES page 116	Family Adverbs of degree	Adverbs of manner Ə The letter <i>i</i>	What's it like to grow up in a big family?
Life Skills Emotional skills: Being a good friend page 120			
Review 5 Units 17–20 page 122			
Extra activities page 124			
Vocabulary list page 127			
Grammar reference and practice page 137			
List of irregular verbs page 158			

Key to symbols:

Ə Pronunciation



A2 Key for Schools exam task

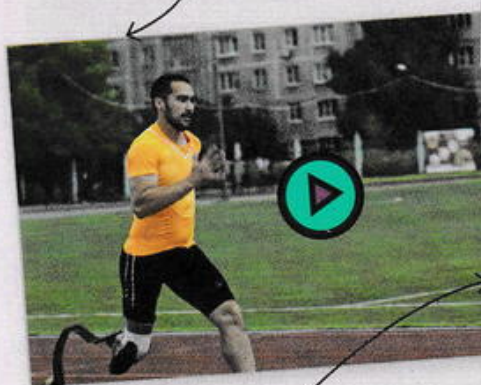


Video

LISTENING	SPEAKING	WRITING	VIDEO
A conversation about a street food festival	Ordering food		▶ Street foods
✔ A conversation about a new computer		✔ An email to a friend	▶ Technology
Conversations about health problems A conversation about a race	Giving advice		▶ Health problems
✔ A conversation about a visit to Edinburgh		An article about a city	
			▶ A view of Scotland
A story about looking for the Loch Ness monster	A story about a strange animal		
An interview about looking after pets		✔ A story	▶ Animals
A conversation about watching a football match A conversation about a talent show	Talking about TV programmes		
A conversation about a school magazine A review of a film		A review of a film, play or book	▶ Books we like
			▶ The world of British TV
✔ A talk about a school trip A description of a boarding school	Giving a presentation about your perfect school		▶ School life
A talk about a family tree Descriptions of families		✔ A description of your family	

Learn about the culture of English-speaking countries and the wider world

Watch interesting documentaries about the culture topics



Develop important skills that you can use in your daily life

THE PAI GAMES

1. **Pair** discuss the questions with your partner.
- Do you like doing sports? What sports do you do?
 - Do you like watching sports on TV? After sports do you go to bed?
 - Do you usually watch the Olympic Games on TV?
2. **Read** the text in boxes. Write 10 matching words to the text in the phrases. Circle 5 and attach a verb to the words in brackets.
3. **Read** the text again and complete the table.
- | | English | Russian |
|--|------------------|---------------|
| When do you play? | on Saturdays | в субботу |
| What do they need? | a ball and a net | шарик и сетку |
| How many players are there on a team? | seven | семь |
| How many players can there be on a team? | ten | десять |
| How many players can there be on a team? | ten | десять |
4. **Find** the word **opposite** to the text and choose the correct meanings, a or b.
1. **opposite**
 - a ball of wool
 - a person in a sports competition
 2. **opposite**
 - to turn something around so that you can't see it
 - to turn something around so that you can see it
 3. **opposite**
 - a ball of wool
 - a person in a sports competition
 4. **opposite**
 - a person in a sports competition
 - a person playing a game or sport
 5. **opposite**
 - a person playing a game or sport
 - a ball of wool



International Research Committee

First official Paralympic Games: 1960. They were held in Rome, Italy and there was a special opening and closing ceremony.

Number of sports: Around 25

Celebrated: Every two years. There are summer Games and winter Games.

Paralympic SPORTS

The Paralympic Games take place every two years. There are winter games and summer Games. Athletes with physical disabilities from different countries compete for gold, silver and bronze medals.

The Paralympic Games have a lot of different competitions for a lot of different sports. There are 22 sports in the summer Games and five sports in the winter Games.

Here's a description of two popular sports played in the Paralympic Games.

1. You play first and you induce from **three** or **four** players. They need a ball. They join the ball from one person's location.
2. You play the spot as a court music. Player sit on the floor in a net and a ball. Needs need to hit the ball over the net in three times using their arm.
3. Each team has ten players on the net. Each team is on a different side of the net.

There are 15 players on a team, but there are only four players on the court for each team at one time. For a game, the ball is hit over the opposite team's net and then someone has to catch the ball.
4. The net is lower than in the Olympic version, in this Olympic version, the players stand.
5. The indoor court is smaller than in the game played outside. It is the same size as a basketball court. The **ball** is at the end of the court.
6. The indoor court is smaller than in the game played outside. It is the same size as a basketball court. The **ball** is at the end of the court.

PROJECT

imagined you work for a trade station. In pairs, write interview questions for a Paganistic attitude.

- First sub:
 - Their names
 - What sport they do
 - Where they are from
 - How many medals they have
 - What their coach has told you can not tell the athletes
- Find information on a Paganistic athlete. Answer the questions
- Tell the class what you found out

BEING A GOOD FRIEND

100% SWISS

- 1** Find the antonyms and answer the questions.
- It is better to have a few good friends than a lot of friends.*
- Don't be over-optimistic about things.*
- It is not good to have too much money.*
- 2** Choose the qualities that you think are important in good friends. In pairs, compare your ideas.
- They listen carefully.
They make me feel good.
They are honest for real.
When I have a problem they help me.
They know me as I am.
They give me their opinion.
They trust me.
- 3** Read the text quickly. Match sentences



- 5** Listen to Karl talking to Martha. What does Martha do?

 - a She tells Karl her problems.
 - b She invites to Karl and tries to help him.
 - c She calls Karl.

6 Listen again and answer the questions.

 - 1 What are you keen on Karl and Martha say?
 - 2 Why is Karl being sick?
 - 3 What did Karl say immediately after his argument?
 - 4 According to Martha, what is the good news for him?
 - 5 Does Martha think Karl should call a nurse?
 - 6 What does Martha say Karl should call a nurse?

TALKING POINTS

Write the idea back to write your own story and suggest a friend's family member a success!

7 Now listen again and match the two lines of the sentences.

USEFUL LANGUAGE

 - a I've been thinking...
 - b I'm a bit nervous...
 - c I'm a bit shy...
 - d I'm a bit nervous...
 - e I'm a bit shy...
 - f I'm a bit nervous...
 - g I'm a bit shy...
 - h I'm a bit nervous...
 - i I'm a bit shy...
 - j I'm a bit nervous...
 - k I'm a bit shy...
 - l I'm a bit nervous...
 - m I'm a bit shy...
 - n I'm a bit nervous...
 - o I'm a bit shy...
 - p I'm a bit nervous...
 - q I'm a bit shy...
 - r I'm a bit nervous...
 - s I'm a bit shy...
 - t I'm a bit nervous...
 - u I'm a bit shy...
 - v I'm a bit nervous...
 - w I'm a bit shy...
 - x I'm a bit nervous...
 - y I'm a bit shy...
 - z I'm a bit nervous...

PROJECT

[illegible]

BEING A GOOD FRIEND 12

REVIEW 5 UNITS 17–20

VOCABULARY

- 1 Write a word in each group of words. Complete the acrostic for the last word.
- o u n d e r*
o u n d e r
o u n d e r
o u n d e r
1. *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 2. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 3. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 4. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
2. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 3. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 4. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
3. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 4. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
4. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 5. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
5. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 6. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
6. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 7. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
7. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 8. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
8. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 9. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
9. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 10. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
10. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 11. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
11. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 12. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
12. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 13. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
13. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 14. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
14. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 15. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
15. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 16. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
16. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 17. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
17. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 18. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
18. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 19. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
19. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 20. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
20. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 21. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
21. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 22. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
22. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 23. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
23. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 24. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
24. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 25. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
25. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 26. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
26. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 27. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
27. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 28. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
28. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 29. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
29. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 30. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
30. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 31. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
31. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 32. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
32. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 33. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
33. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 34. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
34. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 35. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
35. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 36. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
36. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 37. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
37. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 38. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
38. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 39. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
39. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 40. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
40. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 41. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
41. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 42. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
42. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
 43. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* *r*
43. *o* *u* *n* *d* *e* <

GRAMMAR

- Read the rules about entering the talent show. Complete Emma's e-mail to Lauren with the verbs and phrases in the box.
- | | | | |
|-----|-------|---------------|--------------|
| can | can't | don't know it | rules for it |
|-----|-------|---------------|--------------|
- TALENT SHOW**
- Rules for entering**
- Age** 14 or under
- Categories** You can be in any of five groups
- Entry to festival** 1-10 p.p. person
- Just click the name on our website!**
Pay by 31 July
- Hi Lauren,
I've got some information about the talent show. It's on 14 July in the school hall. The prize is £50. I think it's a great idea. I've got a plan. I want to be in the pop group. I'm 13. I was asked to enter, see? I sing 100 songs, and I can do it. I'm a genius for the audition. Yes, you can, we can enter into the vote of the school. What do you think? Could we be in?
- Emma
- Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
- do they sing your song? ...
 - The audition there is very good, and ...
 - What if you come to the festival at 7 o'clock?
 - Correct the mistakes in the sentences.
 - Why not to enter a film? ...
 - Why not they bring anything when your clothes and gear ...
 - Why not sing something when you have ...
 - Why not come some, some information for the judges ...

LISTENING

- Listen to a boy called Owen talking about a picture of his family. Listen and write the correct letter beside each name.
- | | |
|--------|--------|
| Name | Circle |
| Andy | 1 |
| Ruby | 2 |
| Oliver | 3 |
| Wynn | 4 |
-
- © 2005 Pearson Education Ltd. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced without permission in writing from Pearson Education Ltd.

References

- 1** For each question, write the correct answer in each gap. Write *ONE* word in each gap.
- Dear Mary,
- It's **1** *surprising* to find that my old school has been to Spain. The main **2** *reason* **3** *for* this is that the school is now **4** *an* **5** *international* center for the **6** *study* of languages and the **7** *main* **8** *reason* this is a good idea is **9** *that* it encourages learning, not just for work or money. They even talk **10** *of* using technology to help them.
- Love,
John

SPREADING

- [illegible]

Work together to create something fun and expand your learning

Check your progress



1 Match the words in the box to the letters A–P in the photo.

Then listen, check and repeat.

GRAMMAR

Verb *be*

3 Look at the photo and listen to the questions. Complete the table with a tick (✓) for the right answers.

B: *Is there a green bag under my desk?*
A: *Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.*
A: *Are there any coats near the door?*
B: *No, there aren't.*

have got

- 5 Read what Simon says. Tick (✓) the things he's got in his bag.



My bag's really heavy today! I've got three textbooks, four exercise books and my pencil case. I've also got a bottle of water because I've got football club after school. I've got a sandwich and some money too. I haven't got my phone – that's at home in my bedroom.

- 6 In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

A: What have you got in your bag today?

B: I've got ...

A: Have you got a/an/any ... in your bag today?

B: Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.

Write five sentences about your partner.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 137

SPEAKING



PRONUNCIATION

The alphabet

- 1 Listen and repeat.

Aa Bb Cc Dd
Ee Ff Gg Hh
Ii Jj Kk Ll
Mm Nn Oo Pp
Qq Rr Ss Tt
Uu Vv Ww
Xx Yy Zz

- 2 In pairs, read out the names of the letters and complete the table with the letters that sound the same. Two columns have no additional letters!

A	B	F	I	O	U	R
H	C					

- 3 Listen and check.

- 3 Complete questions 1–6 with the words in the box. Then match the questions to answers a–f.



borrow mean page
repeat say spell

- I'm sorry, can you _____ that, please?
- How do you _____ *bonjour* in English?
- What _____ are we on?
- How do you _____ 'because'?
- Can I _____ your ruler?
- What does 'in pairs' _____?

- B-E-C-A-U-S-E.
- Sure, here you are.
- With your partner.
- I said, 'please do Exercise 3'.
- 19, I think.
- Hello.

VOCABULARY

Numbers


-  **1** Listen and repeat.
 **2** Listen and choose the numbers you hear.

a	25	75	39
b	13	30	70
c	41	61	91
d	14	16	40
e	17	19	90
f	15	50	80

Dates

- 3** Say the months in the correct order.



-  **4** Listen and write the dates.

When we **say** dates, we **say the** and of:
 My birthday is on **the ninth of June**.
 When we **write** dates, we don't write **the or of**:
 My birthday is on **9th June**.

- 1** 1st March

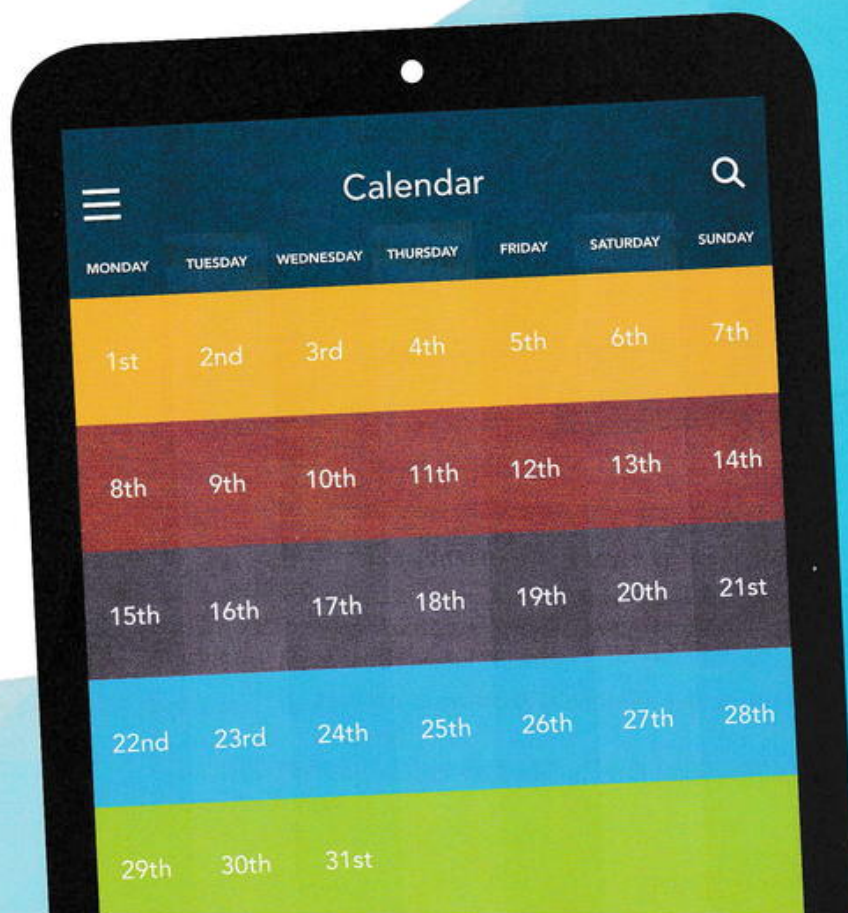
In pairs, compare your answers.
 Say the dates.

- 5** In small groups, ask and answer the questions.

- When / your birthday?
- What / today's date?
- When / your mum's/dad's birthday?

Write the dates of all the students in your group.

10 ten	20 twenty	30 thirty	40 forty
50 fifty	60 sixty	70 seventy	80 eighty
90 ninety	100 a hundred		



GRAMMAR

can

1 Match the photos A-H to the words in the box.

draw a car make a cake play tennis
ride a bike run 5 km speak three languages
stand on your head swim underwater



2 In pairs, ask and answer about the activities in Exercise 1.

Can you play tennis?

Yes, I can.

Can you swim under water?

No, I can't.

Now ask around the class. How many people can ...

- swim under water?
- speak three languages?
- ride a bike?
- play tennis?
- draw a car?

Present simple

3 Read about the students and answer the questions. Use complete sentences.

- 1 Does Tyler like music?
- 2 How many brothers has Jason got?
- 3 What sport does Millie like?
- 4 Where does Tyler want to go?
- 5 What does Jason do every day?
- 6 When does Millie go shopping?



Hi, my name's Tyler.

I've got a brother and a sister. I like music and I love travelling. I want to go to China.



Hello, I'm Jason.

I haven't got any brothers or sisters. I like all sports and I play football every day.



Hello, my name's Millie.

I like swimming and I often go shopping with my sister on Saturday. I love sweets but I don't like ice cream.

4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions.

0 / do sports every day?

A: Do you do sports every day?

B: Yes, I do. I play tennis after school every day.

- 1 What kind of music / like?
- 2 / like travelling?
- 3 / play football at school?
- 4 / like swimming?
- 5 What / favourite food?

Now tell the class.

Manuela doesn't like swimming. She likes ...

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 138

SPEAKING

1 Write questions to find out about your partner's ...

- age
- address
- phone number
- brothers and sisters
- favourite pop star
- favourite school subject

In pairs, ask and answer the questions. Then write sentences about your partner.



ABOUT YOU

Do you like basketball,
football or tennis?
Which sport do you prefer?
Do you play any sports?



VOCABULARY

AND

READING

Sports

1 Match the pictures A–M to the words in the box.

EP

do athletics	play badminton
do gymnastics	play baseball
go cycling	play hockey
go sailing	play rugby
go skating	play table tennis
go snowboarding	play volleyball
go surfing	



Listen and check. Then repeat.

2 In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- Which of the sports do you do in teams (a group of people)? Which do you do alone (just one person)?
- Which of the sports can you do both in teams and alone?
- Which of these sports do *you* do?
- Do you prefer team sports or sports you do alone? Why?

4 Read Sophie's and Ben's blogs. Who does their sport every week? Who can't do their sport where they live?

5 Read about Sophie and Ben again and answer the questions.

- How many women and girls do Sophie's sport?
- What does Sophie do at the weekend?
- What does Sophie want to do at Loughborough University?
- Where does Ben prefer to be?
- Why does Ben go snowboarding every day?
- Ben says he's 'goofy-foot'. What does 'goofy-foot' mean?

TEENBLOG:
SPORT

Post about you and your sport here.

It's fun!

My sport is ... rugby! That's me in the photo. People think that rugby is for boys, but that's not true. More than 18,000 women and girls play rugby in England. My team always plays a match on Saturday or Sunday, and I usually go to practice games three times a week. It's hard work, but it's never boring! I'm 14 and I play for the U15s. That's the team for players under the age of 15. When I'm older, I want to go to the rugby summer camp at Loughborough University. My favourite player, Fran Matthews, went there and now she plays for the England national rugby team.

Posted by **Sophie White**

PRONUNCIATION

/eɪ/ and /aɪ/

3 Put the words into the correct column.

baseball	bike	fly	play
riding	skating		

/eɪ/ sailing

/aɪ/ cycling



Listen and check. Then repeat.

GRAMMAR

Adverbs of frequency

We use the present simple to talk about things we do often or every day.

I go snowboarding every day.

- 1** Look at these examples from the blogs. The adverbs of frequency are in purple.

My team **always** plays a match on Saturday or Sunday. It's **never** boring.

It's **usually** quiet.

I **often** go with my little sister and other young people.

I **sometimes** go snowboarding with Mum.

Write the words in purple on the right place on the line.

0% 100%
a _____ b _____ c _____ d _____ e _____

- 2** Answer the questions.

- 1 Which sentences in Exercise 1 have a present simple verb?
- 2 Which sentences in Exercise 1 have the verb *be*?

- 3** Choose the correct words to complete the rules.

In sentences with the verb *be*, we put the adverb of frequency *before / after* the verb.

In sentences with the present simple, we put the adverb of frequency *before / after* the verb.

- 4** Read the examples and choose the correct words to complete the rules.

People don't **always** play sport in teams.

Ben doesn't **usually** go snowboarding with his dad.

Do you **sometimes** play volleyball with friends?

Is rugby **often** dangerous?

Football isn't **always** boring!

In negatives and questions with the present simple, we put the adverb of frequency *before / after* the main verb.

In negatives and questions with the verb *be*, we put the adverb of frequency *before / after* the verb *be*.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 138

- 5** Put the adverbs in the right place to complete the sentences and questions.

- 1 I play hockey at school on Fridays. (usually)
- 2 Sophie is tired after rugby matches. (often)
- 3 People don't go sailing in teams. (always)
- 4 My uncle and my dad play table tennis. (never)
- 5 Is gymnastics dangerous? (sometimes)
- 6 Do you go cycling? (often)

- 6** Put the words in order to make sentences and questions and questions.

0 often / school / plays / my friend / after / football

My friend often plays football after school.

1 welcome / sports / are / in / our / club / always / you

2 Mondays / do / on / athletics / never / we

3 skating / brother / she / go / her / usually / does / with / ?

4 table tennis / students / not / often / do / school / play / at

5 cycling / and / her sister / at / the weekend / sometimes / Lizzie / go /

- 7** How often do you do the sports in Exercise 1 on page 14?

I never play rugby, but I often play volleyball. It's great fun. How about you?

I sometimes play rugby, and I often go cycling. It's never boring.

- 8** In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- 1 What sports do you do?
- 2 How often do you do them?
- 3 Do you play sports at school?
- 4 How often do you watch sports on TV?
- 5 How often do you go to watch sports?
- 6 Who are your favourite sports stars?

Goofy-foot or regular?

I love the snow and the mountains. I feel at home there. I live in a city and there's no snow here, but in the holidays, I always go to the mountains with my family. I sometimes go snowboarding with Mum, but I often go with my little sister and other young people. Mum usually skis with my dad, and my sister and I like spending more time in the snow than they do. It's usually quiet. When we're in the mountains, I go snowboarding every day and I'm getting really good. I often think about the future – I want to be a famous snowboarder one day, like Max Parrot. Oh, and I'm *goofy-foot* – that means I put my right foot at the front of the board.

Posted by Ben James

READING

- 1 Look at the photos of the sports and games. What can you see?
- 2 Read the three texts and match them to the photos.

TRY THESE SPORTS!

1 CYCLEBALL

This sport is like football on bikes. There are two teams. Each team has usually got two players. The bikes don't have any brakes to stop them. Players in each team try to hit the ball into the goal. They can use their bike or their heads to do this. The ball is quite heavy – it weighs half a kilogram. The winning team is the team with the most goals at the end of the game.

2 GILLI-DANDA

This is an ancient sport from India. The players use two things: one long stick, called a *danda* and a short egg-shaped bat, called a *gilli*. There are two teams. One player puts the *gilli* on the ground inside a small circle and hits it into the air with the *danda*. Then the player hits the *gilli* again and runs to touch a spot outside the circle to get a point.

3 OCTOPUSH

The sport is also called *underwater hockey*. There are two teams. Each team has got six players. Players swim underwater to play this game. They use small sticks and a puck. The puck is a little like a flat ball. It's heavy and weighs about a kilogram. Players try to push the puck along the bottom of a swimming pool into the other team's goal. The winning team is the team with the most goals at the end of the match.

- 3 Read the three texts again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (X)?

- 1 There are always two players in a cycleball team.
- 2 The ball in cycleball is small and light.
- 3 Players in cycleball can't hit the ball with their hands.
- 4 *Gilli-danda* comes from India.
- 5 The stick and the bat in *gilli-danda* are the same size.
- 6 Players use a small ball in *gilli-danda*.
- 7 People play octopush in teams.
- 8 Players in octopush hit the ball, or puck, with their hands.
- 9 Players in octopush swim underwater to play their game.



TALKING POINTS

Which of these sports do you want to try?

Do you have any sports like these in your country?

VOCABULARY

Sports equipment

1 Match the photos A-E to the words in the box.



bat ball board racket stick

12 Listen and check. Then repeat.

2 Complete the table with the sports in the box. Some sports can go in more than one column.

badminton	baseball	basketball
cycleball	cycling	football
gilli-danda	hockey	octopush
rugby	running	sailing
snowboarding	surfing	swimming
table tennis	tennis	volleyball



Use a stick,
a racket or a bat



Use a ball



Use a board

13 Listen and check. Then repeat.

3 Complete the information with the sports words in Exercise 1.

TABLE TENNIS

- One _____ for each player.
- One small, light _____ for the game.

BASEBALL

- One _____ for each team.
- One small, hard _____ for the game.

BADMINTON

- One _____ for each player.

OCTOPUSH

- One small _____ for each player.
- One heavy puck, like a flat _____ for the game.

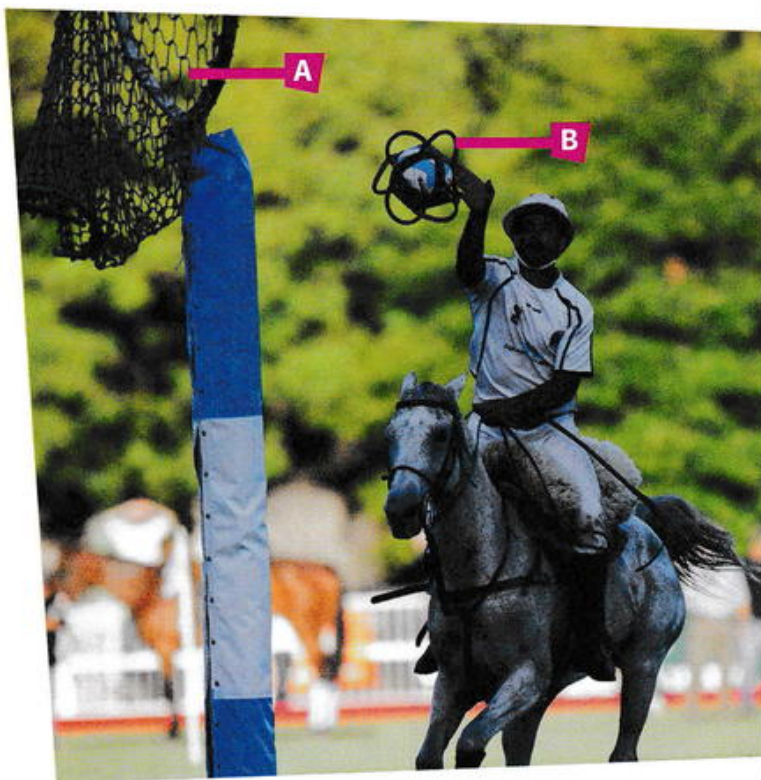
LISTENING

1 Look at the photo of the sport. Match the words 1-2 to A and B in the photo.

- 1 handle 2 net



2 Listen to an interview with a boy about his unusual sport. What's the name of the sport?



3 Listen again, and choose the correct words.

- There are *four* / *six* players in each team.
- There are *six* / *eight* handles on the ball.
- Players *throw* / *give* the ball to each other.
- Players *throw* / *put* the ball in the net to score a goal.

SPEAKING

1 Think of a sport. Choose one from this unit or another sport that you know. In pairs, take turns to ask and answer the questions.

- Do people do this sport inside or outside?
- Is the sport on or under water?
- Is this sport on snow?
- What things do people need to do this sport?
- Do people play this sport in your country?
- What do you like about this sport?
- Who are some of the famous players of this sport?

Try and guess the sport.

2 THIS IS MY DAY

? ABOUT YOU

What time does your alarm go off on a school day?
What do you do in the morning before you go to school?



A



0:03 / 4:05

MY MORNING ROUTINE

11,345 views

1k

Share



Maddie's mad life

FOLLOW

VOCABULARY

AND

LISTENING

Daily routines

1 Match the photos to the phrases in the box.

EP

brush your hair check your messages
clean your teeth get dressed have breakfast
leave the house prepare your school bag
put on your shoes tidy your room wake up

15

Listen and check. Then repeat.

16

2 Listen to Maddie talking about her morning routine. Number the photos in the order that you hear them.

3

Can you remember Maddie's routine? Complete the sentences with the times in the box. You don't need to use all the times.

6.00	6.30	6.45	6.50	7.00	7.10
7.15	7.30	7.40	8.00	8.10	

- My alarm goes off at _____.
- I get up at _____.
- I clean my teeth at _____.
- I get dressed at _____.
- I prepare my school bag at _____.
- I put my shoes on and leave home at _____.

16

Listen again and check.

4

In pairs or small groups, talk about your morning routine.

I wake up at seven o'clock.

I get dressed and then I have breakfast.

B



D



F



H



J



C



E



G



I



GRAMMAR

Present continuous and present simple

- 1 Look at the examples from the listening. Write *simple* or *continuous*.

Present _____

Today, I'm talking about my morning routine.

I'm having cereal with fruit today.

At the moment, I'm wearing my favourite T-shirt.

I'm leaving the house now.

I'm not wearing my uniform today.

Present _____

I never have a shower in the morning.

I always check my messages in the morning.

I sometimes have toast and butter.

I usually wear my uniform.

I don't usually have a shower in the morning.

- 2 Complete the rules with the underlined words.

We often use the **present simple** with words like _____, _____ and _____.

We often use the **present continuous** with words like _____, _____ and _____.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 139

- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct tense of the verbs in brackets.

0 I'm shopping (shop) at the moment. I can't talk.

1 My mum always _____ (cook) nice food.

2 The teachers usually _____ (give) us a lot of homework on Monday.

3 I _____ (stay) at home today. I _____ (not go) to school.

4 It's five o'clock now and I _____ (watch) TV with my sister.

5 What time _____ your dad usually _____ (get up) on a Sunday?

6 It's OK, Jack's _____ (not sleep) at the moment. You can go and talk to him.

- 4 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.



is getting

0 My cousin gets married today.

1 How are you? I write to you to give you some news.

2 What do you do at the moment?

3 My brother and I are not going swimming every day.

4 My mum is only working in the mornings.

5 We usually are eating a big breakfast on Sunday.

- 5 Make sentences with the present simple and present continuous. Use *usually* and *today* or *at the moment*.

0 walk to school / go by bus.

I usually walk to school, but today I'm going by bus.

1 have a sandwich for lunch / spaghetti

2 watch TV after school / do my homework

3 play football on Saturday / play tennis

4 get up at seven o'clock / eight o'clock

5 have a shower / have a bath

- 6 Put the words in order to make questions.

1 your / the / moment / friend / what / doing / is / at?

2 bed / do / go / you / what / usually / to / time?

3 school / do / get / home / how / from / you?

4 sitting / is / teacher / at / down / your / the / moment?

5 sun / today / shining / is / the?

6 day / do / every / get / at / same / up / the / time / you?

Now match the questions to the correct answer.

a No, it isn't.

d Yes, he is.

b 10 pm.

e She's sleeping.

c I walk.

f Yes, I do.

In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- 7 Work in pairs. Student A, mime an activity in the box. Student B, guess what it is.

catch a bus check your messages
do some homework go to sleep
paint a picture play football
prepare lunch put on your coat
take a photo



Are you putting on your sunglasses?

No

Are you taking a photo?

Student A, when Student B guesses the activity, give more information:

I go to a photography club every Friday. It starts at 7 pm. I go there by bus.

Student B, ask more questions.



READING

1 Read the texts once. Who starts school the earliest?

Tell us about your day...

Three young people from around the world describe a typical school day



17



A Onni – Finland

I get up at 8.00 am. For breakfast I have cereal and milk, with orange **juice**. After breakfast, I meet my friend, and we go to school together on the metro. Some days school starts at 9.00 but on other days at 10.00. We don't wear a uniform,

and we call our teachers by their first name. We all get a free lunch at school – meat or fish with vegetables for the **main course** and fruit for **dessert**. School usually finishes at 2.45, and after that I go to music lessons or drama club. I have a **snack** in the evening before bed.

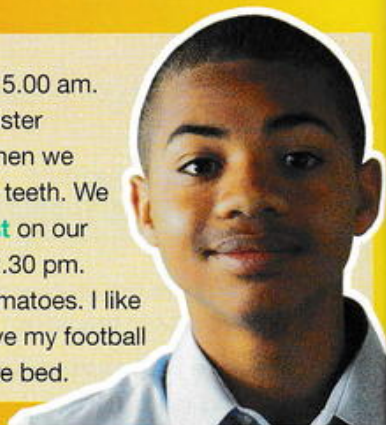


B Diego – Mexico

I wake up at 6.00 am, have a shower and put on my uniform. My breakfast is coffee, with bread and cheese or avocado. At 7.00 am, it's time to go to school. Sometimes I walk, but often my mum drives me. Classes begin at 8.00 and finish at 2.30. After that, I have my art class. I have **lunch** at about 3.00, and then I do my homework. I do it till 6.00 or 7.00. After that, I go on the internet, or watch TV with my family. I have **dinner** at about 8.00.

C Aban – Ghana

My mother wakes me and my sister up at 5.00 am. I water the plants in the garden, and my sister prepares the food for the evening meal. Then we put on our school uniforms and brush our teeth. We leave the house at 6.30 and buy **breakfast** on our way to school. Lessons are from 7.30 to 2.30 pm. Lunch is at school – today, it's rice and tomatoes. I like it, but my sister doesn't! After school I have my football class, and in the evening I watch TV before bed.



2 Read the texts again. For each question, write O (Onni), D (Diego) or A (Aban).

- Who says he uses the computer in the evening?
- Who can choose what he wears to school?
- Who doesn't have breakfast at home?
- Who goes to school by car?
- Who doesn't start school at the same time each day?
- Who does sport after school?
- Who has a hot drink in the morning?



TALKING POINTS

Whose school day is like yours? Whose is different?
Was any of the information surprising to you?

VOCABULARY

Food

1 Look at the texts and find these words.

- This is the first meal of the day. **breakfast**
- This is sweet and you have it at the end of the meal.
- You have this when you don't need a big meal.
- You have this meal in the middle of the day.
- This is a drink made from fruit.
- This is the last meal of the day.
- This is the largest or most important part of the meal.

2 Match the photos to the words in the box.



avocado bread cabbage cereal
cheese cucumber fish fruit honey
hot chocolate jam mango pasta toast
tomatoes rice vegetables yoghurt



Listen and check. Then repeat.



3 Think of ten more food words. In pairs, compare your words. Then ask and answer these questions.

- 1 What's your favourite food? What don't you like?
- 2 What do you have for breakfast?
- 3 What time do you have dinner? What do you have?
- 4 What snacks do you have every day?

LISTENING

1 Read the poster. What do you think of these tips?

2 Listen to the radio show. You will hear a woman asking six students about getting up in the morning. Match each student to the correct tip. There is one tip you do not need.

Student 1	Tip A
Student 2	Tip B
Student 3	Tip C
Student 4	Tip D
Student 5	Tip E
Student 6	Tip F
	Tip G

3 Listen again and check. Then in small groups, discuss the questions.

- 1 Which of the tips do you think are useful? Which are not useful?
- 2 Can you think of other tips for getting up in the morning?
- 3 Is getting up in the morning easy or difficult for you?

WRITING

PREPARE TO WRITE

A paragraph about your routine

GET READY Read the three texts in Exercise 1 on page 20 again and find all the examples of *and*, *but* and *or*.

Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 We don't get chocolate or crisps or / but at school.
- 2 I walk to school and my brother but / or gets the bus.
- 3 I eat lots of fruit and drink lots and / or of water.
- 4 I like staying up late but I can't but / and do that during the week.
- 5 I don't like carrots or tomatoes. or / but

PLAN Make notes about what you do and eat on a typical school day.

WRITE Write a paragraph about it. Look at your notes and the reading texts for ideas. Use *and*, *but* and *or* in your paragraph.

REVIEW In pairs, read your own text and your partner's. Check for mistakes. Give your partner two ideas to make their text better.

PRONUNCIATION

The sound /ə/

4 Listen and repeat.

breakfast dinner vegetables

5 Listen and repeat. Circle the /ə/ sound in each word. One word has two /ə/ sounds. Which word is it?

pasta chocolate banana salad
tomato yoghurt cucumber

7 tips to help you feel great in the morning!

A have a cold shower

B tidy your room

C let in the sun

D drink fruit juice

E move!

F use your brain!

G don't keep your alarm by your bed

CULTURE

THE PARALYMPIC GAMES

- In pairs, discuss the questions with your partner.
 - Do you like doing sports? What sports do you do?
 - Do you like watching sports on TV? What sports do you watch?
 - Do you usually watch the Olympic Games and the Paralympic Games?
- Read the text in boxes 1–6 and match them to the sports in the photos. Write *SV* (sitting volleyball) or *WR* (wheelchair rugby).
- Read the texts again and complete the table.

	Sitting volleyball	Wheelchair rugby
Where do you play?	1 _____	2 _____
What do they need?	a ball and a 3 _____	wheelchairs and a 4 _____
How many players are there on a team?	5 _____	6 _____
How many players from each team are on the court?	7 _____	8 _____

- Find the words **highlighted** in the text and choose the correct meanings, a or b.
 - medal
 - a type of ball
 - a prize in a sports competition
 - wheelchair
 - something people use when they can't walk
 - something people use to stand on
 - court
 - a place with seats
 - an indoor or outdoor area for games
 - player
 - a person in a wheelchair
 - a person playing a game or sport
 - goal line
 - a line you pass to get points
 - the number of players on a team

FACTFILE

The Paralympic Games

The International Paralympic Committee website (www.paralympic.org) tells us these facts:

First official Paralympic Games: 1960. They were held in Rome, Italy and there was a special opening and closing ceremony.

Number of sports: Around 25

Celebrated: Every two years. There are summer Games and winter Games.



Paralympic SPORTS

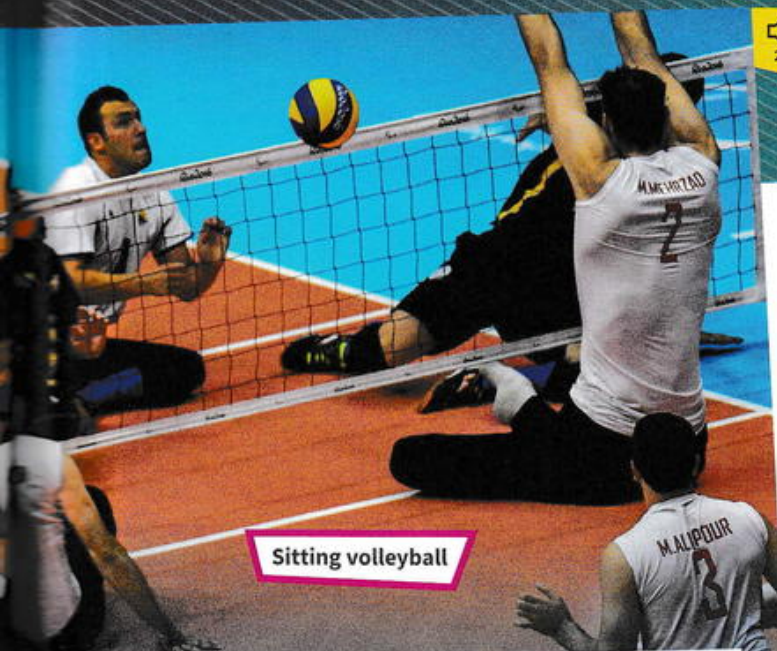
The Paralympic Games take place every two years. There are winter Games and summer Games. Athletes with physical disabilities from different countries compete for gold, silver and bronze **medals**.

The Paralympic Games have a lot of different competitions for a lot of different sports. There are 22 sports in the summer Games and five sports in the winter Games.

Here's a description of two popular sports played in the Paralympic Games.



Wheelchair rugby



Sitting volleyball

1

WR You play this sport on an indoor court. **Players** are in **wheelchairs**. They need a ball. They pass the ball from one person to another.

3

Each team has six players on the **court**. Each team is on a different side of the net.

5

The net is lower than in the Olympic version. In the Olympic version, the players stand.

6

The indoor court is smaller than in the game played outside. It is the same size as a basketball court. The **goal lines** are at the far ends of the court.



TALKING POINTS

Which sport do you like best – sitting volleyball or wheelchair rugby. Why?

2

You play this sport on a court inside. Players sit on the floor. They need a net and a ball. Teams need to hit the ball over the net in three turns using their arms.

4

There are 12 players on a team, but there are only four players on the court for each team at one time. For a goal, the team carries the ball over the opposite team's line and two wheels need to cross the line.

6



5

Listen to an interview with Martha Dirksen about a Paralympic sport. What sport does she do?



Wheelchair basketball



Wheelchair tennis



Wheelchair rugby



6

Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 How old is Martha?
- 2 Where is the court?
- 3 What does she want to be in one day?
- 4 What has her sports hero got?
- 5 Where is David Wagner from?
- 6 Does Martha play tennis on Tuesdays?
- 7 Does Martha rest at weekends?

PROJECT

An interview

Imagine you work for a radio station. In pairs, write interview questions to ask a Paralympic athlete.

- Find out:
 - Their name.
 - What sport they do.
 - Where they are from.
 - How many medals they have.
- Write three questions you can ask the athlete.
- Find information on a Paralympic athlete. Answer the questions.
- Tell the class what you found out.

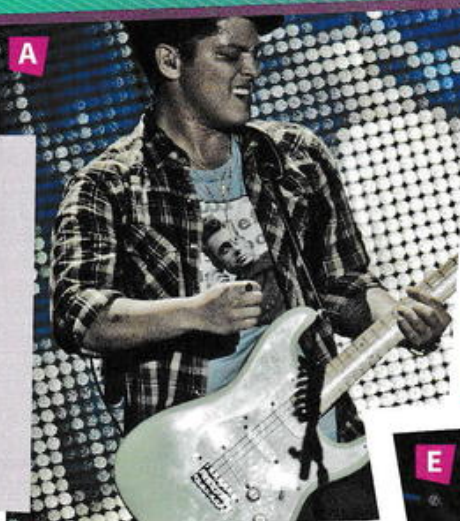
3

GREAT SOUNDS

ABOUT YOU

02 Watch the video then ask and answer the questions.

When do you listen to music?
Where do you listen to music?
Do you listen to music alone or with friends?
Can you play any musical instruments? Which one(s)?



VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Music

1 Look at the words in the box. Complete the table.

EP

classical music drums electric guitar
hip-hop jazz keyboard opera
piano pop rap rock saxophone
soul violin

Types of music	Musical instruments

2 Match the photos A-F to the musical instruments in Exercise 1.

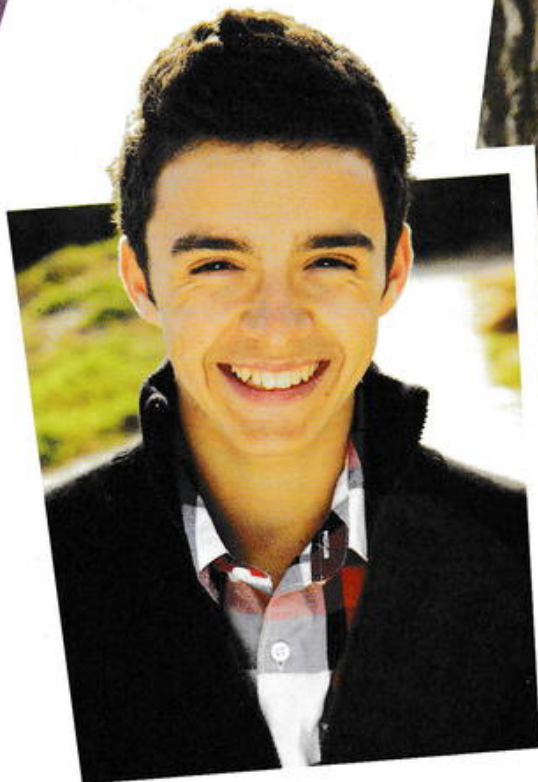
24 Listen and check. Then repeat.

25 3 Listen to the different types of music. Match them to the types of music in Exercise 1.

4 What types of music do you think the people are playing in the photos?

5 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 You usually need a lot of different instruments for *classical music* / *pop* and the pieces of music are often quite long.
- 2 People sometimes use sticks when they play the *keyboard* / *drums*.
- 3 There are different singers in *jazz* / *an opera*. It's a bit like a play with music and singing.
- 4 In *rap* / *rock*, the artists don't really sing the words; they speak them.
- 5 You put the *saxophone* / *violin* to your mouth to play it.
- 6 A *piano* / *an electric guitar* is quite easy to carry around.



- 6** Listen to Jason and Mia talking about music and musical instruments. Who can play:

- 1 the saxophone?
- 2 the electric guitar?
- 3 the keyboard?
- 4 the piano?

- 7** Listen again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (X)?

- 0 Mia likes the new album a lot. ✓
- 1 Mia often listens to jazz at home.
- 2 Jason likes opera.
- 3 Jason's sister plays in a rock group.
- 4 Jason thinks the violin is easy to play.
- 5 Mia likes the drums.

GRAMMAR

**like, don't like, hate,
love + -ing**

- 1** Put the words in bold on the correct place (a-d).

- 1 I **don't like** listening to opera.
- 2 She **likes** playing classical music.
- 3 I **hate** playing the violin.
- 4 I **love** listening to rap.



- 27** Listen and check. Then repeat.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 140

- 2** Look at the examples in the table. How does the verb change in the **-ing** form?

help → helping	write → writing	run → running

Now complete the table with the **-ing** form of these verbs in the correct columns.

choose	drive	get	learn	make
practise	ride	sing	sit	swim
win				

- 3** Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 I **like** / **hate** rock. It's too loud.
- 2 She **doesn't like** / **loves** playing the piano. She prefers the saxophone.
- 3 My mum **loves** / **hates** listening to opera. She often goes to watch it.
- 4 Lots of people **like** / **don't like** hip-hop, but I think it's great.

- 4** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs.



- 0 On Sundays, I like **having** lunch with my family. (have)
- 1 My dad likes _____ the news online. (read)
- 2 I really love _____ football with my brother. (play)
- 3 I love _____ to my friends' houses to play computer games. (go)
- 4 Everyone in our class likes _____ English. (learn)
- 5 Do you like _____ to music when you are doing your homework? (listen)

- 5** In pairs, ask and answer the questions.



- 1 Do you listen to music?
- 2 What's your favourite type of music?
- 3 Who are your favourite musicians and what instruments do they play?
- 4 What's your favorite instrument?
- 5 Can students learn to play instruments at your school? Which ones?

READING

1 Look at the photos. In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- 1 Is it easy to become a famous musician?
- 2 How do people start in the music business?
- 3 How can the internet help people to become musicians?

2 Read the article quickly and match the teenagers' questions 1-3 to the advice A-C.



STARTING IN THE MUSIC BUSINESS

DO YOU WANT TO PLAY IN A BAND, OR BECOME A FAMOUS SINGER OR SONGWRITER?

Read on to find out how!



Pete

- 1 I'm a singer-songwriter. I give concerts at a local club. Everyone likes listening to my music and wants to buy a CD. What can I do next?



Shona

- 2 Hi, I play in a band with some friends from school. The others aren't serious about music, but I am. Help! Do I stay with the band or find other musicians to play with?



Spark

- 3 I'm 15 and a rapper. I record my songs and put them online. I get lots of hits! But I live in the countryside and there are no gigs here. It's too far for me to travel to the city. What can I do to become famous?

3 Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (X)?

- 1 Pete sells CDs of his songs at his concerts.
- 2 Pete needs to make an album with a record company.
- 3 Shona is more interested in music than her friends are.
- 4 Shona needs to change school as soon as possible.
- 5 Spark lives a long way from the city.
- 6 Spark doesn't need to perform live for people to hear his music.



A

Why not make a music video too? Then it doesn't matter where you live. Ask your parents or someone from school if it's okay, and they can show you how to do it. Then you can upload the video to a social network like YouTube or Instagram. That's how Shawn Mendes became famous!

B

You already write and perform your own songs. Great! Next step: record an album using computer software and post it online. You don't need a record deal. College courses are a really useful way to learn how to do this, and can give you other ideas too. Ask at your school.

C

Music is an important part of your life. Stay with your friends for the moment but think about going to a music school. These schools teach music and everything you need to know about becoming a musician. Talk to your parents about it. Good luck!



TALKING POINTS

Are any of your friends musicians?
Do any of your friends upload their music to the internet?
Do you like listening to music on the internet?
Which sites do you prefer?

VOCABULARY

Music phrases

- 1** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.

EP

become a singer become famous
give a concert go on tour
make a music video play in a band
record an album teach music

- My dad can help me _____. Then I can upload it to Youtube.
- My sister is a famous classical musician. She _____ in our town every summer.
- Amy can't play an instrument, but she has a very good voice. She wants to _____.
- Andy plays the drums well. He _____ with his friends on Saturdays at the music club.
- We've got ten new songs and they're really good. Let's _____.
- I really want to _____ one day and be on TV and play at big festivals.
- My mum plays lots of instruments, and she _____ at our school.
- When bands _____, they play concerts almost every night in lots of different places.

- 2** Read the article again. In pairs, answer the questions in your own words using information from the article.

- Pete: 'What can I do next?'
I think you can record an album and play it to your friends.
- Shona: 'Do I stay with the band or find other musicians to play with?'
- Spark: 'How can I become famous?'

- 2** In pairs, take it in turns.

- Say your email address.
- Say your phone number.
- Spell your mother's or your father's first name.



- 3** Listen to the conversation. Shona is talking to her friend Emma about the music school. Complete the notes.



Music lessons are in the ¹ _____

School lessons are in the ² _____

Name of Music School: ³ _____

Phone number: ⁴ _____

Head's name: Ms ⁵ _____

Email address: ⁶ _____



Listen again and check.

LISTENING



PRONUNCIATION

Email addresses, phone numbers and names

For @ we say 'at'. For . we say 'dot'.
For two numbers (77) we say 'double (seven)'.
For two letters (bb) we say 'double (b)'.
For the number 0 we say 'oh'.

- 1** In pairs, practise.

- Say this email address:
school@musicpopcloud.com
- Say this phone number: 0451 256 337
- Spell this name: Joanna



Listen and check. Then repeat.

SPEAKING

- 1** In pairs, take turns to ask and answer the questions.



- Do you like different kinds of music?
What are they?
- Do you like different musical instruments?
Which ones?
- Do you think ...
jazz is interesting?
opera is exciting?
classical music is boring?
the saxophone is difficult to play?
musical instruments are expensive?
- Which of these different types of music do you like best?
- Do you prefer listening to music at home or going to concerts? Why?
- Which instrument would you like to play?

4

IT WAS AWESOME!



ABOUT YOU

What do you do to have fun with family and friends?
Share your ideas with your classmates.

VOCABULARY

AND

LISTENING

Adjectives

1 Look at the photos. Where are the people and what are they doing?



2 Listen and match the conversations to the photos.

Conversation 1 _____ Conversation 2 _____ Conversation 3 _____
Conversation 4 _____ Conversation 5 _____ Conversation 6 _____



3 Listen again. How did the speakers feel about their experiences?
Complete row A of the table with the conversation numbers.

4 Now complete row B of the table with the adjectives in the box.



amazing awesome brilliant fantastic
fine great horrible lovely OK
perfect really good terrible wonderful

		😞	😏	😊	😄
A	Conversation				1
B	Adjectives				amazing



Listen and check. Then repeat.

5 Choose the correct words to complete the conversations.

0 A: I'm not in the basketball team any more.

B: Oh no! That's terrible / fantastic!

1 A: I've got a new mobile phone.

B: Wow! That's fine / brilliant!

2 A: My sister's getting married.

B: That's great / OK!

3 A: Look at my lunch!

B: That's horrible / excellent – don't eat it!

4 A: Are you enjoying the film?

B: It's OK / lovely. It's not great.

5 A: I got top marks in my test.

B: That's wonderful / terrible, well done.

6 In pairs, practise the conversations. Then make some new conversations together.

GRAMMAR

Past simple of *be*

1 Look at the examples.

Positive

I **was** at my sister's wedding.

We **were** at a barbecue near the beach.

All the bands **were** fantastic.

Negative

The weather **wasn't** great.

You **weren't** in class.

Questions and short answers

Where **were** you last night?

How **was** the food?

Were you at the football match? Yes, I **was**.

Was it fun? No, it **wasn't**.

Now choose the correct words in the box to complete the rules about the past simple of *be*.

was were n't

- We use _____ with I/he/she/it.
- We use _____ with you/we/they.
- We add _____ to *was/were* to make negative sentences.
- We put _____ / _____ before the subject to make questions.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 141

2 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- My school lunch *was / were* really nice yesterday.
- My brothers *was / were* late home this evening.
- That TV programme *wasn't / weren't* very good!
- We *wasn't / weren't* too tired after our walk.
- What *was / were* the time when you got home?
- How many people *was / were* on the school trip?

3 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.



was

- The weather is good yesterday.
- All my friends was here on Saturday.
- I like your new shoes! Are they expensive?
- Yesterday I were at a friend's house.
- The players was good and the weather was fine.
- That is an awesome party last night!

4 Complete the conversation with *was/wasn't, were/weren't*.

Suzy: Hi Max. Where ⁰ *were* you yesterday afternoon? You ¹ _____ at school.

Max: Oh hi Suzy. No, I ² _____. I ³ _____ at a big athletics competition at the city sports club.

Suzy: Really? ⁴ _____ it fun?

Max: Yes, it ⁵ _____. It ⁶ _____ amazing! I ⁷ _____ the winner of the 800 m race!

Suzy: Fantastic! ⁸ _____ your parents there?

Max: No, they ⁹ _____. They ¹⁰ _____ at work. But my brother ¹¹ _____ there with his video camera, so it ¹² _____ fine!



PRONUNCIATION *was/were*



5 Listen to some sentences from the conversation and repeat them.

Now practise the conversation with your partner. Take turns to close your book and see if you can remember it.

6 Complete the questions with the words in the box. Then ask and answer the questions with a partner.

Was Were What was What were
When was Where were Who were

- _____ your dinner like last night?
- _____ your friend late this morning?
- _____ your teachers when you were six?
- _____ you on Saturday morning?
- _____ your favourite TV shows when you were little?
- _____ you in this class last year?
- _____ your last haircut?

Write three more questions to ask your partner. Tell the rest of the class the answers.



READING

- 1 Read the reviews of the activity days. Three of the reviews have four stars and one has five stars. Which one do you think has five stars?

ACTIVITY DAYS

34

LATEST REVIEWS

Fun day!

I was very surprised to get this activity day for my birthday, but indoor skydiving was awesome! I can't wait to go again. Before the activity, there are lots of hand signals to learn, so you can communicate when you're flying in the wind tunnel. You can't speak in there! At first, I was worried about forgetting them, but it was fine. **Jade**



Fantastic!

I'm really interested in cars, so this was an amazing day for me. I still can't believe that my first driving experience was in a Lamborghini and an Aston Martin! I've got a video of the whole thing. I'm glad about that, because on the day there's no time to look at the cars properly. As soon as you finish, the next driver gets in. I was a bit upset about that.

Liam



Amazing trip!

This was my first time in a helicopter, and I was quite nervous. I wasn't sure I wanted to do it. But there was no need to be afraid – in fact, I was sorry when it was over! I was in the front seat and the view was fantastic. The only problem was that we were back on the ground after only ten minutes. **Mia**



Really special!

What a brilliant afternoon! First, there was a talk about the history of chocolate. Then it was time for the best bit – making and decorating our own chocolates! The teachers were lovely and happy to help with any problems. There were photos to buy afterwards, but they were really expensive. I was angry about that. **Ethan**



- 2 Read the texts again and answer the questions with a phrase or short answer.

- What does Liam like a lot?
- What wasn't Liam able to do on his activity day?
- Was Jade's activity day a present?
- What wasn't possible in the wind tunnel?
- What was Ethan's favourite part of the day?
- Were the photos cheap?
- Was Mia nervous after flying in a helicopter?
- Was Mia's helicopter trip long or short?



TALKING POINTS

Would you like to do an activity day?
Which of these looks most fun?
What sort of presents do you get for your birthday?
What do you give other people?

VOCABULARY

Emotions

- 1 Look at the texts. Find and underline the words in the box. Match some of them to the emojis.

EP

afraid angry glad happy interested
nervous sorry surprised upset worried



- 2 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- I'm so *sorry* / *afraid* you're not feeling well!
- I'm *angry* / *nervous* about my piano exam tomorrow! I don't feel ready.
- My little brother's crying. He's *upset* / *glad* because my mum isn't there.
- I'm painting a picture at the moment, and I'm really *happy* / *surprised* with it.
- My mum's *worried* / *interested* about my school work, but my teacher says it's fine.
- I'm really *glad* / *angry* you're here at last! Why are you so late?

LISTENING

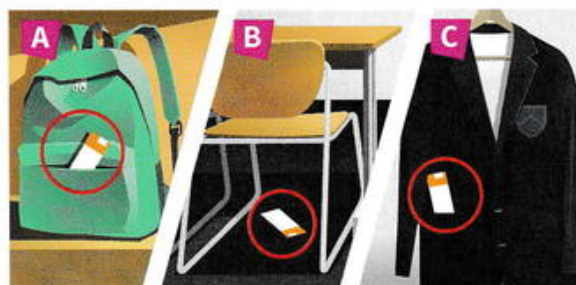
1 Read questions 1–5 and look at the pictures. What can you see in each picture?

2 Listen to five short conversations. For each question, choose the correct picture (A, B or C).

1 What was Bella happy with at the party?



2 Where is Kyle's ticket?



3 What was the weather like?



4 How much was the boy's T-shirt?



5 Where was the girl on Saturday?



WRITING



PREPARE TO WRITE

A description of a party

GET READY Read the text and answer these questions. Whose party was it? Where was it? What time was it? What food was at the party?

I was at my best friend's birthday party last month. Her name's Isabella and the party was at her house on 12th May, from 6 pm to 9 pm. It was a really big party. All her friends and family were there, and we were so excited about it. There was lots of food – pizza, salad and of course cake! It was all really nice. Isabella was nervous before the party, but she was fine when everyone was there. It was a really brilliant evening!

Now underline all the adjectives. Which describe the party and the food, and which describe how the people felt?

Put the adjectives in the correct place in the sentences.

- 1 There was some food at the party. (nice)
- 2 There were lots of people at the party. (happy)
- 3 This is music! (terrible)
- 4 Jake is a dancer. (brilliant)
- 5 I like going to parties. (big)

PLAN Make notes about a party you were at. Use the questions in *Get ready* to help you.

WRITE Write a paragraph about the party.

IMPROVE In pairs, read each other's paragraphs. Check for mistakes with *was/were* and adjectives. Give your partner two ideas to make their paragraph better. Use your partner's advice and rewrite your paragraph.

REACHING AGREEMENT



Reaching agreement

For two people to agree, you need to:

- listen carefully
- give your opinions calmly and clearly
- try to understand the other person's ideas before you decide what to do.

1 Read the sentences. Answer the questions.

Let's agree to disagree.

We can find a 'win-win' solution.

- 1 What do you think the sentences mean?
- 2 Which sentence do you prefer? Why?
- 3 When do you need to make decisions? For example, think about doing a class project, going to an event or watching TV.

2 Do you ever disagree with friends about these things? How do you reach an agreement?

What to do at the weekend

What to buy a friend for their birthday

What topic to choose for a school project

3 Read the problems on Danny's page quickly and write the names on the correct replies. Do you have any problems like these in your life?

4 Read the texts again. Which person/people has/have these problems?

Which person/people ...

- 1 has/have a problem with a friend?
- 2 has/have a problem with a family member?
- 3 has/have a problem at school?
- 4 hasn't/haven't got a lot of time?
- 5 wants/want to go to the cinema?
- 6 maybe needs/need to agree to disagree?

5 Complete the sentences with the **highlighted** words from the texts.

- 1 I don't _____ with the things my friend does in class.
She doesn't listen to the teacher.
- 2 Do you agree or _____ with the idea of going to the cinema?
- 3 I hope you _____ the film.
- 4 Can you give me some _____? I don't know what to do.
- 5 I'm _____. I can't go to the cinema with my friends.
My mum and dad want me to stay at home with my little brother.
- 6 Maybe you don't agree. In that _____, you can make your own plans.



6 Listen to Lola, Oscar and Daisy talking. What are they planning?

- a They are making plans to go the cinema.
- b They are making plans to study for their maths exam together.
- c They are making plans for a surprise party.



7 Listen again and choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1** First, they need to decide on a _____ for the party.
a present **b** day
- 2** They decide to meet on _____.
a Sunday night **b** Saturday afternoon
- 3** Lola thinks it's a good idea to get a _____.
a basketball shirt **b** notebook
- 4** Oscar thinks it's a better idea to get a _____.
a T-shirt **b** CD
- 5** Michael loves _____.
a listening to music **b** going to the cinema
- 6** They decide to _____.
a get nothing **b** get a CD and a book
- 7** Oscar wants to _____.
a buy a cake at the shop **b** make a cake
- 8** Lola needs to _____.
a study **b** help her mum

8 Are the sentences in the *Useful language* box used for agreeing (A), disagreeing (D) or making suggestions (S)?



I disagree *D*

How about a basketball shirt?

I have a better idea.

I agree.

I think a CD is a better idea than a book.

That's an awesome idea!



Help me,
Danny!

Send me your
problems and I can
give my **advice**.

1

Dear Danny,

I want to go to see a film tonight, but my best friend wants to play basketball. We always play basketball and I'm bored! What can I do?

Regards,
Bored Best Friend

2

Dear Danny,

I have a problem. My best friend is often not nice to our maths teacher. She doesn't listen, she never does her homework and she says bad things about the teacher. I tell her to stop, but she gets angry with me. What can I do? Thanks for your help.

Unhappy Friend

A

Dear _____,

It's important for you and your sister to **agree** because you haven't got a lot of time. Make a list of good things about each present to help you decide. Then go shopping and choose the present together. Try to find a win-win solution.

Enjoy shopping and happy birthday to your brother! *Danny*

3

Dear Danny,

It's my brother's birthday at the weekend. My sister wants to buy him a T-shirt, but I want to buy him a book. We have only £15 and only one day to go shopping. What do you think?

Birthday Brother

C

Dear _____,

I think it's a good idea to talk to your friend and tell her to stop. You can tell her that it's important to be good in class and that you don't like what she's doing. Is she finding maths difficult? Does your friend need help studying? Listen carefully to your friend to help her.

Enjoy your lessons at school!

Good luck! *Danny*



TALKING POINTS

How about YOU? Are you organising a party for someone? Do you normally buy presents for your friends? Do you and your friends always agree? What do you do then?

PROJECT

Planning a
surprise party

In small groups, plan a party to surprise a friend.

- Think about:
 - who the party is for
 - when the party is
 - where the party is
 - what food and drink you want
 - what you need to do
 - *what you need to buy*
 - what music to play
 - what activities you can do at the party
- Design an invitation for your party.
- Present your invitation to the class.

REVIEW 1

UNITS 1-4

VOCABULARY

1 Match the sports equipment words to the photos.



ball bat racket stick

Now match the equipment to these sports.

baseball basketball hockey rugby
table tennis tennis volleyball

2 Put the words into the correct column.

athletics cereal cheese
classical music cold meat cycling
dessert dinner drums fish
fruit gymnastics keyboard
hip-hop jazz juice opera
piano pop rap rice rock
sailing saxophone snowboarding
soul tomatoes vegetables violin

Food	Music	Sport

3 Complete the missing word in each sentence.

- Please can you p _____ your school bag after breakfast?
- I want to m _____ a music video with my brother.
- He likes cooking a _____. He doesn't like cooking with other people.
- That's a f _____ idea. I think it's really good.
- Do you always t _____ your bedroom at weekends?
- My sister is u _____ because she can't come to the party.
- Bands usually go on t _____ when they make a new album.
- That's b _____ news about the tennis match. Well done!
- I always get d _____ before breakfast.
- My brother doesn't like exams. He always gets very n _____.

GRAMMAR

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- I love *talk / talking* to my friend and I love *go / going* shopping with her too.
- I *sing / am singing* in the school hall on Fridays.
- The film *was / were* very exciting.
- In my free time, I *usually stay / stay usually* at home.
- That *is / was* a very good barbecue last Sunday.

Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- I go often with my friends to the cinema.
- How are you? I write to you to give you some news.
- The weather amazing last month.
- I like go to school because I like my teachers.
- Yesterday is my birthday.

2 Put the words in order to make questions.

- your brothers / what / wake up / do / time / usually / ?
What time do your brothers usually wake up?
- making / what / you / are / ?
- mum / the / does / play / guitar / your / ?
- play / you / Tuesday / do / tennis / every / ?
- your / you / at the moment / are / doing / homework / ?
- your / brother / playing / this morning / football / is / ?

3 Now match the questions to the answers. Then complete the answers with the verb in the correct tense.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| a Yes, she _____ (play) it really well. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| She _____ (learn) a new song at the moment. It sounds great! | |
| b They <u>are sleeping</u> (sleep) at the moment but they usually <u>wake up</u> (wake up) at seven. | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| c Yes, I am. I _____ (do) my maths. It's really difficult! | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d No, he's with his friends. They _____ (watch) a film at Tom's house. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| e Yes, I do, and I often _____ (play) on Saturdays as well. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| f I _____ (make) my breakfast. I usually _____ (have) bread, but today I _____ (have) a bowl of cereal with fruit. | <input type="checkbox"/> |

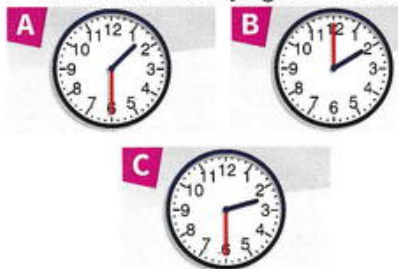
Tamburello



LISTENING

- 1 Listen to five short conversations. For each question, choose the correct picture.

1 What time do they agree to meet?



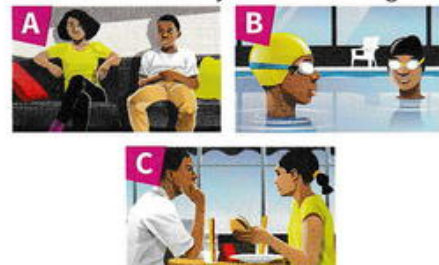
2 Which instrument does Mona need to practise tonight?



3 What is Finley's brother doing?



4 Where were they in the morning?



5 What does the girl want to have for dinner?



Tamburello is a sport from the north of Italy. It is a very old sport. The first games were in the 16th century. Players can play the game inside or outside.

It's a team sport and there are usually three players in each team. Players hit the small tennis ball to players in the other team. But they don't use bats or rackets to hit the ball. They use tambourines. Have a look at the photo. Yes, the players have got tambourines in their hands. The Italian word for tambourine is *tamburello*. That's how the sport gets its name.

A player in one team hits the ball over the line to players in the other team. A player in the other team hits it back. When a player doesn't hit the ball or when the ball goes too far, the other team wins a point. There are four points in each game. That's the same as the points in tennis. When players play a match, they usually play 13 games.



READING

1 Read the text and answer the questions.

- Which country does the game come from?
- How old is the game?
- How many players are there in a game of *tamburello*?
- What do the players hit the ball with?
- How many games are there in a *tamburello* match?
- What two things in *tamburello* are like the game of tennis?

SPEAKING

1 Put the words in order to make questions.

- name / your / what's / ?
- you / where / live / do / ?
- old / you / how / are / ?
- favourite / what's / sport / your / ?

Ask and answer the questions with your partner. Take turns to speak.

2 In pairs, talk about music. Take turns to speak.

- Let's talk about music. What kind of music do you listen to?
- When do you listen to music?
- Do you listen to music on your phone?
- Who is your favourite singer / favourite band?
- Tell me something about your singer / band.

VOCABULARY

AND

READING

Historical events

- Look at the photos in the quiz. Can you name any of these people? Do you know, or can you guess, why they are famous?
- Match the photos to the quiz questions.
- Complete the quiz questions with the words in the box.

EP

climbed crossed died opened
 painted played published received
 recorded travelled



ABOUT YOU

What famous people do you know from history?

Why are they still famous today?

When and where were they born?

- In pairs, do the quiz. Choose A, B or C.



Listen and check.

- In pairs, Student A, name a photo. Student B, say what happened.

Student A: *Photo J*

Student B: *Cleopatra died.*

Women in history

- Cleopatra, Queen of Egypt and the last pharaoh, _____

A in 180 BCE.

B in 70 BCE.

C in 30 BCE.

- Marie Curie _____ the Nobel Prize in chemistry

A in December 1911.

B in December 1925.

C in December 1950.

- Valentina Tereshkova _____ into space

A on 12th August 1961.

B on 3rd April 1962.

C on 16th June 1963.

- Amelia Earhart _____ the Atlantic Ocean, alone, by plane

A in 1932.

B in 1941.

C in 1950.

- Coco Chanel _____ her first shop in Deauville, France

A in the 18th century.

B in the 19th century.

C in the 20th century.

- Frida Kahlo _____ her self-portrait with parrots

A in 1920.

B in 1935.

C in 1941.

- Serena Williams _____ her first match at Wimbledon

A in 1996.

B in 1998.

C in 2000.

- Junko Tabei _____ Mount Everest

A on 16th May 1975.

B on 5th April 1977.

C on 12th May 1980.

- J. K. Rowling _____ her first Harry Potter book

A in March 1985.

B in June 1997.

C in July 2004.

- Ella Fitzgerald _____ her first song

A in 1928.

B in 1930.

C in 1936.

A

B

C

D

E

J

I

H

G

F

1 Look at the answers to the quiz again. Complete the rules for *in* and *on*.

We use *in* / *on* for the date and the day.
 _____ 12th August 1961 / _____ Tuesday.

We use *in* / *on* for months, years and centuries.
 _____ January / _____ 2004 /
 _____ the 20th century.

2 In pairs, test your partner.

In 1998 Serena Williams played her first match at Wimbledon.

Past simple: regular verbs

3 Read the sentences. Look at the letters in **purple**. What do we add to the verbs to make the past tense?

Ada Lovelace completed the first computer program in 1842.
 NASA's Curiosity Mars Rover landed on Mars on 6th August 2012.

4 Look at the verbs in the table. Write the past simple forms of the verbs in the box in the correct column.

clean	complete	cook	copy	enjoy	finish	help	invite	join	paint
phone	plan	play	prefer	study	want				

climb → climbed	change → changed	carry → carried	stay → stayed	stop → stopped
cleaned				

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 142

5 Now complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs and *in* or *on*.

- I _____ (cook) dinner _____ Sunday.
- My mum _____ (study) history at university _____ 2001.
- My dad _____ (play) for Manchester United _____ September 1988.
- She _____ (invite) us to her 14th birthday party _____ 8th June.

PRONUNCIATION Past simple -ed

- 6 Listen to the -ed sounds. Sometimes we add another syllable when we say the -ed and sometimes we don't.

Put the verbs from the box in Exercise 4 into the correct column.

finished: <i>ed</i> is NOT an extra syllable	waited: <i>ed</i> IS an extra syllable
--	--

Listen and check. Then repeat.

7 Choose the correct verb forms.

- I *like* / *liked* the competition because my sister was in the team.
- She *watches* / *watched* TV and likes playing on the computer.
- We really *want* / *wanted* to go to skiing last week, but there wasn't any snow.
- It *starts* / *started* to rain in the night. It was very noisy.
- I really *enjoy* / *enjoyed* the weekend. I don't want to go home tomorrow.
- The film was really great yesterday. I *like* / *liked* it.
- I *need* / *needed* a new coat. Can we go shopping this afternoon?

8 Make six sentences about you using the past simple and *in* or *on*. Use the words in the box to help you.

climb	complete	cross	dance
finish	join	open	paint
record	reveal	start	visit

This year we started school on 4th September.
 I visited China with my family in 2013.

READING

1 Look at the photos.

What do you know about London today?
How was it different in the 17th century?
Discuss your ideas with your partner.

2 Read the article and check your ideas from Exercise 1. Match the four photos A-D to paragraphs 1-4.

3 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences about the Great Fire of London.

- 1 London is *bigger* / *smaller* today than it was in the 17th century.
- 2 The fire started in a bread shop early on *Saturday morning* / *Sunday morning*.
- 3 A lot of people lived in houses made of *wood* / *stone*.
- 4 The houses burned *quickly* / *slowly*.
- 5 5th September was the *first* / *last* day of the fire.
- 6 The Tower of London is *more than* / *less than* 350 years old.
- 7 St Paul's Cathedral is a(n) *new* / *old* stone building.

The Great Fire

1 Saturday 1st September 1666 was a normal day in London. The city was smaller than it is today, but the little shops were busy and there were lots of people in the streets.

2 Just after midnight that night, something happened in a bread shop in Pudding Lane to change everything. A small fire started in the building. Most people lived in small houses in those days. These houses were very close to each other. The floors at the bottom of the houses were made of stone, but the rest of the houses were made of wood. The fire moved first to the houses and shops on each side of the bread shop, jumping from roof to roof. The buildings started to burn, and the fire travelled quickly from house to house, from shop to shop and from street to street. The fire moved very fast through the buildings and burned for three days, from Sunday 2nd until Wednesday 5th September.

3 After the fire, the buildings made of wood were not there anymore, but many churches and the famous castle, the Tower of London, were still there because they were made of stone.

4 So the people of London decided to make new buildings of stone. You can still see many of those stone buildings from after the fire in London today. One of the most famous is a church. It's called St Paul's Cathedral.



VOCABULARY

Buildings

1 Match the words in the box to the meanings.

EP

castle	cathedral	ceiling
church	floor	palace
square	stairs	statue

- This is on the top of a building and keeps out the sun and the rain.
- Someone important or rich, like a king or queen, lives in this very large house.
- This is a model of a person or an animal, made of wood or stone.
- This is a building that Christians use.
- You use these to go up or down to another part of a building.
- This is a very large building that Christians use.
- This is an open space in the centre of a town.
- We walk on this part of a room.
- This old stone building has large walls and towers.
- This part of a room is above our heads.

2 Complete the table with the words from Exercise 1.

Places / things in a city	Parts of buildings

3 Add other words that you know to the table.



TALKING POINTS

Which of the places or things in a city in Exercise 1 are in your town?
Which buildings are made of stone?
Which buildings are made of wood?
Which do you think is better, a building made of stone or a building made of wood? Why?

LISTENING



1 Listen to the radio programme *Living History – I was there!*

Dave Brown is talking to Janet about a moment in history she remembers. What moment does Janet remember?



2 Listen again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (x)?

- Janet lived with her family in a house in Manchester.
- There were computers but no mobile phones in the 1960s.
- Black and white televisions only show black and white pictures.
- Janet's dad telephoned the shop to buy a colour television.
- Her dad and uncle carried it to the flat.
- The first programme they watched in colour was sport.

SPEAKING

1 Work in small groups. The Great Fire of London was an important moment in British history. Think of/find out about an important moment in the history of your country.

Talk about it and prepare a presentation. Use these questions to help you.

- What's the important moment?
- When was it?
- What happened?
- Why was it important?

2 Tell the class about your moment in history.

Our important moment from history is _____.

It happened on (date) in (place).

These are some of the things that happened. There was ... and then ...

It was an important moment because ...

3 In your groups, draw a timeline and put your events on the timeline.



6

WHAT A GREAT JOB!



ABOUT YOU

03 Watch the video and answer the questions about you.

What job do you want to do when you're older? Why?
What job don't you want to do? Why not?

VOCABULARY

AND

READING

Jobs

1 Match the photos A-P to the words in the box.



actor artist cook dentist
engineer factory worker farmer
manager mechanic model nurse
photographer pilot police officer
shop assistant sports coach



Listen and check. Then repeat.

2 Choose five of the jobs and write what the person does. Then work in small groups. Say your sentences and see if the other students can guess the job.

A: *This person helps you when you want to buy something.*

B: *Is it a shop assistant?*

3 In groups, look at the adjectives in the box and discuss which jobs they apply to.

boring difficult easy fun interesting



PRONUNCIATION

Three-syllable words



4 Listen and repeat the words. Then put them into the correct column in the table.

afternoon assistant difficult
engineer expensive interesting
manager mechanic understand

000

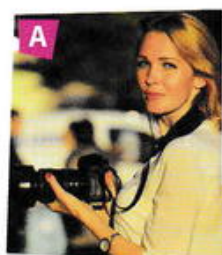
o0o

oo0

assistant

afternoon

5 Look at the title of the article and the photo. What do you think the article is about? Read it once to check your ideas.



50 weeks, states, different jobs

When Daniel Seddiqui was 26, he travelled around the USA for a year. He visited all 50 states and worked for a week in each one. He didn't use buses or planes – he travelled by car from job to job. He earned money for every job he did, but hotels were too expensive for him. He usually stayed in his boss's home, or with one of the other workers. 'People were very good to me,' says Daniel. 'They looked after me really well.'

But why did Daniel do this? And did he enjoy it? 'Yes, I did! I wanted to travel and learn about my country,' he says. 'And I wanted to try lots of different jobs.' Things weren't always easy for Daniel. In week 7, he worked as a farmer in Nebraska. 'The days were long, and I got really dirty,' he says. In week 38, he was a cook in a fish restaurant in Maryland. 'That was really hard! Often I didn't even have time to get a drink of water.'

Other jobs were fun. He worked in a theme park in Florida and as a model in North Carolina. He was a football coach in Alabama. In Alaska, he was a photographer. 'That was great. Alaska is a very beautiful place,' says Daniel.

6 In pairs, answer the questions.

Which jobs from Exercise 1 did Daniel do?
Where did he do them?
Why do you think he chose those jobs?
Would you like to do any of these jobs?

GRAMMAR

Past simple: negatives and questions

- 1 Look at the examples in the table and complete the rules with *did* and *didn't*.

Negatives	Questions	Short answers
He didn't use buses or planes. I didn't even have time to get a drink of water.	Why did Daniel do this? Did he enjoy it?	Yes, he did . No, he didn't .

We use _____ and the main verb in the infinitive in negative sentences.
We use _____ and the main verb in the infinitive in questions.
We use _____ or _____ and leave out the main verb in short answers.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 143

- 2 Match the questions to the answers.

- How many states did Daniel visit?
- How did Daniel travel from job to job?
- Why did Daniel stay in people's homes?
- Did Daniel like being a farmer in Nebraska?
- Did Daniel work at a theme park in Florida?
- What did Daniel do in Alaska?

- Because hotels were too expensive.
- He worked as a photographer.
- 50
- By car.
- No, he didn't.
- Yes, he did.

- 3 Tick (✓) the sentences that are true for you. Correct the ones that are wrong.

- I travelled to school by bus today.
I didn't travel to school by bus today. I walked to school.
- I finished my homework at 6 pm last night.
- I cooked the dinner on Saturday.
- I texted ten friends yesterday.
- I painted a picture last week.
- I climbed a mountain during my last holiday.
- I watched a film on TV last night.

- 4 Find and correct the mistakes with the past simple.

- Did you enjoyed yourself on holiday?
- Tom don't talk to me for very long at the party.
- I didn't finished the history homework before the lesson.
- I really don't want to go to my dancing class yesterday.
- Did you remembered my birthday?

- 5 Make questions. Then ask and answer with a partner.


- What / learn about in the last lesson?
What did you learn about in the last lesson?
- /play any sport last week?
- /visit anywhere interesting last month?
- Which school clubs / join last year?
- /answer a question in your last lesson?
- What date / start school this year?
- When / last travel to another country?


Some more of Daniel's jobs

 Wedding planner, Las Vegas

 Mechanic, Detroit

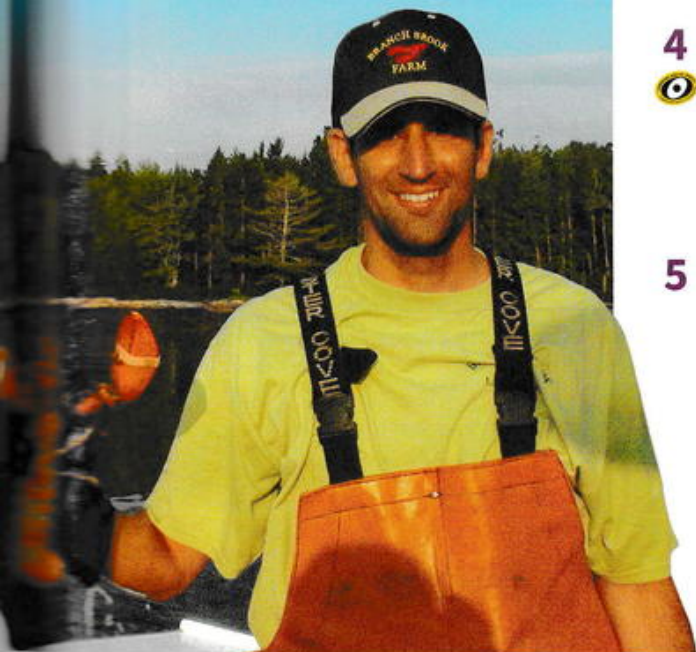
 Factory worker, Pennsylvania

 Oil engineer, Texas

 Cheesemaker, Wisconsin

 Sugar maker, Vermont

 Fisherman, Maine



READING

- 1 Read the article quickly. Where did Nina and Julia do work experience?

STUDENTS AT WORK!

Nina and Julia are 14 years old and go to school in London. But they weren't at school last week – they were doing work experience. This is when young people spend a few days doing a job. They don't earn money, but they work hard and learn about the world of work. Nina's job was in a café and Julia worked for a TV company. We asked them to tell us all about it.

Nina: I was really happy about working in a café, because I'd like to be a cook one day. But I didn't do any cooking at all. Instead I served food and drinks to the customers, cleaned the tables and washed the floor. The café opened at 7 am and closed at 6 pm, but my working hours were 6 am to 2 pm. The staff were friendly, but we didn't have much time for talking. We were all really busy!

Julia: I worked in the office of a TV company. At first, I was upset about that. My plan was to work in a TV studio, not in an office. But the staff were all very nice to me, and I learned a lot about the business. I started at 10 am and finished at 6 pm. In the morning, I opened all the letters. Then I helped my boss with different jobs. Sometimes I answered the phone. Other times he asked me to use the computer to look for information he needed. I was often so busy that I only had ten minutes for lunch!



- 2 For each question, choose the correct answer.

- 1 From the introduction we learn that Nina and Julia
 A enjoyed their jobs. B worked in different places. C were sorry to go back to school.
- 2 What kind of work did Nina want to do at the café?
 A cleaning B cooking C serving food
- 3 What does Nina say about her working day?
 A It was very long. B It started too early. C There was a lot for her to do.
- 4 Why was Julia upset in the beginning?
 A She didn't want to work in an office. B She didn't like the people she worked with. C She didn't know anything about the TV business.
- 5 Julia often didn't have much time to
 A eat her midday meal. B answer the phone. C speak to her boss.



TALKING POINTS

What do you think about students doing work experience? Is it a good idea? Why? / Why not? What sort of work experience would you like to do?

VOCABULARY

Work

- 1 Look at the article and find the words in the box. Then match them to sentences 1-6.



boss office busy staff customers earn

- This means you're working hard and have lots to do.
- These people buy things in shops or cafés.
- When you have a job, this person tells you what to do.
- These people work for a business.
- There are usually desks, phones and computers in this place.
- This means 'get money for doing work'.

- 2 Write five sentences about Julia and Nina using the words in Exercise 1. In pairs, read your sentences. Say *Right*, *Wrong* or *We don't know!* to your partner's sentences.

Julia and Nina earned lots of money.

Wrong

Julia's boss was friendly.

We don't know!

LISTENING

- 1 Listen to Joe talking about the job he did last week. Tick (✓) the correct picture (A, B or C).

- 0 Where did he work?



- 1 What did he do?



- 2 What time did he start?



- 3 How did he travel to work?



- 4 How did he get the job?



- 2 Listen and repeat.

That's brilliant! Congratulations! Wow!
Oh no! That sounds boring. Really?

- 3 Work with a partner. One of you is Joe and the other is Joe's friend. Use phrases in Exercise 2 to make a conversation.

Where did you work?

I worked in the museum.

Wow! That's brilliant.

WRITING



PREPARE TO WRITE

A paragraph about work

GET READY Look at the article about Nina and Julia's work experience on page 42. Find examples of full stops (.), capital letters (A, B, C) and apostrophes (').

Full stops – These are at the end of a sentence.

Capital letters – Use these after a full stop. Also use them for names, days of the week and months, and for the word 'I'.

Apostrophes – These are for contractions (*I've got*) and for possessives (*Jane's dog*).

Read the paragraph about a teenager's day at work. Add full stops, capital letters and apostrophes.

My friend sarahs got a job in a café in the centre of town the cafés called the silver fish and the managers name is bill on saturday, sarah started at 9.00 am she cleaned the floors and served customers after that she helped the cook make soup it was really busy but sarah enjoyed the day

PLAN Talk to someone you know who has a job. Ask them about what they did one day last week. Make notes using some or all of these verbs:

close enjoy finish open start
stop travel use work

WRITE Write a paragraph about the person's day. Write about 50 words.

IMPROVE In pairs, read your paragraph and your partner's. Check for mistakes with punctuation.

CULTURE

FACTFILE

Saturday jobs

SATURDAY JOBS

In English-speaking countries, many teenagers have Saturday jobs. Having a Saturday job helps teenagers:

- ★ plan their time
- ★ meet new people
- ★ make some pocket money
- ★ learn new skills
- ★ learn the value of money

1

JOB OFFER – Saturday mornings

Do you like animals? Do you like nature? Do you like walking? Do you want to earn some **pocket money**? Well, dog-walking is your dream job. And we pay well.

A small, family company is looking for young people to help **walk** dogs.

WHEN: 2 hours on Saturday mornings

THE JOB: Walk 2–3 small dogs

WHERE: Local parks

For more information, visit our *Doggie Walks* website.



1 Look at the photos. In pairs, discuss the questions.

- 1 What are the two jobs in the photos?
- 2 Do teenagers work for pocket money where you live? What jobs do they do?
- 3 What are some good things about being a dog-walker or doing a paper round?

2 Read the job offers. In pairs, discuss which one you think is the best.

3 Match the photos A and B to two of the job offers 1–3.

4 Read the job offers in Exercise 2 again. Answer the questions.

- 1 How many hours a week is the dog-walking job?
- 2 Is the dog-walking job for a company?
- 3 Where is the Saturday afternoon job?
- 4 How can you get more information about the Saturday afternoon job?
- 5 When is the paper round job?
- 6 Where do you take the newspapers on the paper round?

5 Complete the sentences with the **highlighted** words in the job offers in Exercise 2.

JOB OFFER – Saturday mornings

You can earn some ¹ _____.

You need to ² _____ 2–3 small dogs.

Help Wanted – Saturday afternoons

You are ³ _____ for plants, pets and small jobs.

You need to ⁴ _____ the cats.

Extra pocket money?

The job is doing a ⁵ _____.

You need to be ⁶ _____.



2

HELP WANTED

Saturday afternoons

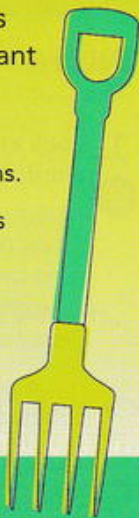
Are you free on Saturday afternoons over the school holidays? Do you want to earn some pocket money?

We are looking for a responsible person to help us at home on Saturday afternoons.

WHEN: 3–4 hours on Saturday afternoons

THE JOB:

- water house plants
- do simple garden jobs
- feed two cats
- clean bird cage
- help with small jobs around the house



For more information, send an email and tell us about you.

3

EXTRA POCKET MONEY? DO A PAPER ROUND!

A small company is looking for young people aged 13–14 to do paper rounds.

WHEN: Monday to Saturdays. 1–2 hours in the morning.

THE JOB:

- you need to take newspapers to people's homes and offices
- you need to be **healthy**
- it helps to have a bicycle
- you need to get up early in the morning
- you need to be responsible and leave newspapers on time

For more information about the job and the pay, send us an email and tell us about you and your experience.



6 Listen to Olivia and her dad talking about Saturday jobs. Tick the correct answers.

1 Olivia has experience doing _____.



dog-walking

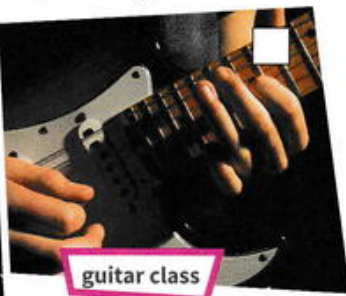


a paper round

2 Olivia has a _____ on Saturday mornings.



piano class



guitar class

7 Listen again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (X)?

- 1 Olivia wants a job on Saturday mornings.
- 2 Mrs Wilson hasn't got a garden.
- 3 Olivia sees a job offer in the newspaper.
- 4 The paper round job is in the centre of the town.
- 5 Mrs Wilson's son is a dog-walker.
- 6 Olivia walks the family dog.



TALKING POINTS

Which job would you prefer? Why?

PROJECT

A job offer

Work in small groups. Think of Saturday jobs. Write an offer for a job on Saturday mornings or Saturday afternoons.

- Think about the following:
 - what the job is
 - experience
 - morning or afternoon
 - number of hours
 - times
 - what you need to do
- Ask other groups questions about their job offers.
- Try to find someone from the other group for your Saturday job. Is anyone in the group a good person for the job? Why? / Why not?
- Tell the class about your job and who is/are a good person

7 AN EXCITING TRIP



A



ABOUT YOU

Where do people in your country like to go on holiday?
Do you like busy holidays or quiet ones?



B



C



D



E



F



G



H

VOCABULARY

AND

LISTENING

Holidays

- 1 Look at the photos. Match the activities to the words in the box.

EP

buy presents	do water sports
go camping	go sightseeing
lie on the beach	ride a bike
stay at a hotel	take photos



Listen and check. Then repeat.



- 2 Listen to Callum and Lottie talking about their holidays. Answer the questions.

- Where did Lottie go?
- Where did Callum go?
- Did they enjoy their holidays?



- 3 Listen again and look at the photos in Exercise 1. What activities did Callum and Lottie do? Write C or L for each picture.

- 4 Work in groups. Say what you like and don't like doing on holiday.

GRAMMAR

Past simple: irregular verbs

- 1 Read the sentences from Callum and Lottie's conversation and look at the **irregular past simple forms**. What verbs do they come from?

- My friend Annabel **came** with us. *come*
- We **swam** in the sea every day.
- We **lay** on the beach.
- We **did** lots of water sports.
- We **rode** our bikes.
- We **got up** late every day.
- We **had** a really good time.
- My parents **gave** me a new phone.
- I **took** hundreds of photos.
- I **went** to Istanbul, in Turkey.
- I **saw** some interesting places.
- I **bought** you a present.
- I only **ate** one sweet.
- We **could** walk to the beach in five minutes.

» GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 144

2 Close your book and listen. You will hear the irregular past tense. Say the verb it comes from.

3 Complete Callum and Lottie's conversation. Use the words and phrases in the box.

Did x2 didn't get up take
Yes, I did got up went

Callum: How was your summer holiday, Lottie?

Lottie: It was brilliant! I _____ want to leave!

Callum: _____ you _____ early every day?

Lottie: Of course not! We _____ late and we _____ to bed late.

Callum: _____ you _____ any photos?

Lottie: _____. I took hundreds of them!

4 Make conversations. Use the verbs in brackets.

1

_____ you _____ to the mountains for your holiday? (go)

No, we _____. We _____ to the beach.

2

_____ you _____ in the sea every day? (swim)

Yes, we _____, and we also _____ in the pool.

3

_____ you _____ any clothes? (buy)

No, I _____. But I _____ a lot of presents.

4

_____ you _____ a lot of ice cream? (eat)

Yes, we _____. And we _____ a lot of sweets.

5

_____ you _____ a good time? (have)

Yes, we _____. We _____ a great time.

5 Write a holiday conversation. Use the conversations in Exercises 3 and 4 for ideas.

6 Correct the mistakes with the past simple.



0 My family and friends were there and they ^{gave} ~~gived~~ me a lot of presents.

1 Yesterday, I go with my dad to a football competition.

2 I went shopping and bough lots of presents.

3 I had a party and all my friends come to my house.

4 I was happy because I get a bag and a T-shirt for only £10!

5 My friend gives me some money to buy an ice cream.

7 Complete the email. Use the verbs in the box in the correct form.

be buy can eat go have
love see stay take visit

To: Su
From: Lee
Subject: Holiday Plans

Hi guys!

I hope your holidays ⁰ were good.

I ¹ _____ a great time in New York. It was a special holiday for my dad's 50th birthday. We ² _____ at a nice hotel called Alberto's. We ³ _____ see lots of famous places from our bedroom window.

The food in New York was great. We ⁴ _____ in a different restaurant every night. My favourite restaurant was Chinese.

We did lots of sightseeing and ⁵ _____ some interesting museums. We ⁶ _____ to the Statue of Liberty and the Empire State Building. We also ⁷ _____ a show on Broadway. Of course, my mum ⁸ _____ the large shops. She ⁹ _____ new clothes for all of us. I ¹⁰ _____ lots of photos. They're all online now – have a look!



8 Write an email to a friend about your last holiday. Look at the text in Exercise 7 for ideas.

ON A **RICKSHAW** TO SEE THE OLYMPICS

56

When Chen Guan Ming was a young man, he never travelled far from his farm in a small village in China. But now he is famous for following the Olympic Games around the world in his three-wheeled rickshaw. The story **began** in 2001, when he **heard** that the games were coming to Beijing. He **left** his village and cycled 90,000 km all over China, visiting 1,764 cities before finally arriving at the famous Bird's Nest Stadium.

Then, he decided to travel to London for the 2012 Olympics. In 2010, he packed his things into his rickshaw and began his journey. He **slept** in his rickshaw and sometimes worked for food and money. Finally, he got to France, and **caught** a ferry to Britain. He only travels by boat or plane when there's no other choice.

When he arrived in London, he **met** lots of tourists and **told** them his story. Some people didn't believe him. Then he showed them the stamps in his passport, and the photos of himself at places like the Eiffel Tower in Paris and Petronas Towers in Kuala Lumpur.

After the London Olympics, Chen left his rickshaw in the UK and caught a flight home to plan his next trip – to the Rio Olympics. In 2013, he **flew** back to London. He **put** his rickshaw on a ship to Canada, and he **took** a plane there. A friend **paid** for his flight ticket. Then, he **got on** his rickshaw and **rode** to Brazil through the US, Mexico and Central America. The journey took three years. He **had** an amazing time in Rio and **made** lots more friends.



READING

- Look at the title of the article and the photos. Which countries do you think the man visited? Read the article quickly and check your ideas.
- Read the article about Chen Guan Ming and answer the questions.
 - What was Chen's job when he was young?
 - How far did he cycle to get to Beijing?
 - When did Chen leave home to go to London?
 - Did Chen go sightseeing during his journey?
 - Where did Chen go after the London Olympics?
 - Did Chen travel with his rickshaw to Canada?
- Look at the irregular past tenses in **purple** in the article. Write the infinitives.
- Do you know about any other long journeys? Would you like to do a journey like this?

VOCABULARY

Holidays

- Match the photos A-I to the words in the box.

EP

airport	coach	ferry	flight
guidebook	map	passport	station
suitcase	ticket	tour guide	tourist



Listen and check. Then repeat.



- 2** Look at the verbs in the box and find them in the article. Then complete the phrases using each verb once only.

EP

arrive catch get on / off pack
take travel by

a photo a long time your things

1 _____

a train a bus a suitcase

2 _____

a bus a train car bicycle

3 _____

a bicycle a plane train bus

4 _____

at the airport a train a ferry

5 _____

in the city a flight a bus

6 _____

- 3** In small groups, ask and answer the questions.

- Do you have a passport?
- What do you always pack when you go on holiday?
- Are guidebooks useful?
- How do you travel to school/the shops/your friend's house?
- When did you last travel on a ferry/coach/plane/train?



PRONUNCIATION

Sounds and spelling

- 4** Match the words with the same vowel sound.

met
caught
plane
flew
coach
map
journey
passport

group
car
catch
work
phone
station
bought
slept



Listen and check.



LISTENING



- 1** Listen to Marion talking about a journey. How did she travel? Number the photos in the order you hear them. There is one extra photo that you don't need.



- 2** Work in pairs, compare your answers. Then listen again and check. Why does Marion say *It's funny ...* at the end of her story?



TALKING POINTS

- 05** Watch the video. Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

Where did you go on your last holiday?
What did you do there?
What did you see?
What did you eat?

SPEAKING

- 1** Work in pairs. Tell your partner a travel story.

Include this information in your story:

- When you went
- Where you went
- Who you went with
- How you travelled
- How long your journey took

Useful words

This happened ... months/years ago.

First, we ...

Then we ...

We took a ... / We caught a ... / We went by bus/car.

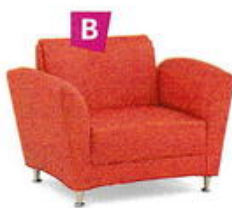
Anyway ...

ABOUT YOU

What is your bedroom like?
What do you do there?



A



B



C



D



E



F



G



H



K



I



J

VOCABULARY AND READING

Bedroom furniture

1 Match the photos A-K to the words in the box.

EP

armchair blanket bookshelf carpet
chest of drawers cupboard curtains
cushion lamp mirror photographs

60

Listen and check. Then repeat.



PRONUNCIATION /ɜ:/ and /ɔ:/

61

2 Listen to the sounds /ɜ:/ and /ɔ:/.

Look at the words in the box and put them in the correct column in the table.

bought	curtains	drawers
first	floor	furniture
wall	were	saw
	work	

/ɜ:/ bird

/ɔ:/ board

curtains

bought

62

Listen and check. Then repeat.

3 What do you have in your bedroom?

4 Read the article. Which of the things from Exercise 1 are NOT mentioned in Rebecca's article?

Everyone needs a

FAVOURITE PLACE

by Rebecca Grant

Today, I want to write about my favourite place. It's by the window in my bedroom. I've got a dark red armchair and a blanket. My grandma made the blanket for me when I was little. Next to the chair is a bookshelf with my favourite books, and there's also a little chest of drawers. On top of it, there are some stones I collected from the beach. I've got a few photographs on one side of the window and a mirror on the other side. I've got curtains on my window, too.

Do you have a favourite place at home? Is it in your bedroom, or in the sitting room, or somewhere else? Maybe you don't have one, but you want to make somewhere you like special. Then here are a few ideas to help you create your special place.

1

Light is important in a room. Is there natural light or do you need a lamp?

2

You don't need a lot of furniture. A chair or an armchair is enough. Or you can put a few large cushions on the carpet in a corner. You don't really need anything else.

3

What colours do you like around you? Use something like cushions to give colour to your bed. Posters and blankets work well for colour too.

4

Now you can collect some favourite things to put in your special place.

63

Remember, no one is the same, so everyone's favourite place is different. Anyone can make their place special.



5 Read the article again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (X)?

- 1 Rebecca has got three pieces of furniture in her favourite place.
- 2 Rebecca's photographs are next to the mirror.
- 3 She says it's nicer to have light from a window.
- 4 She has ideas for a favourite corner without any furniture.
- 5 She tells us the colour of one thing in her favourite place.
- 6 She says most people's favourite places are the same.

GRAMMAR

someone, anyone, etc.

1 Look at the table. Match the words in 1–3 to a–c.

1	everyone someone	anyone no one	These words are about ...
2	everywhere somewhere	anywhere nowhere	a a place. b a thing. c a person.
3	everything something	anything nothing	

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 145

2 Look at the article again. Find seven sentences or questions with the words in Exercise 1.

3 Complete the pronouns with *-thing*, *-one* or *-where*.

- 0 Did anyone come to your party?
- 1 Some _____ gave me these shoes. Do you like them?
- 2 There was _____ on the bookshelf. I looked.
- 3 Can you think of any _____ to go this afternoon?
- 4 I'm hungry but there's no _____ in the fridge!
- 5 She went some _____ hot for her holidays.
- 6 No _____ told me that you wrote stories!
- 7 I'd like some _____ to eat, please.
- 8 Every _____ in the class, except me, likes the colour blue.
- 9 No _____ in my house is a special place.

4 Complete the sentences with *anything*, *everything*, *nothing* or *something*.

- 1 Do you remember _____ about the film?
- 2 The bookshelf is empty. There is _____ on it.
- 3 It's very dark. I can't see _____.
- 4 I learn _____ new in English every day.
- 5 I don't need any help thanks. I can carry _____.

5 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- 0 Please tell me ~~anything~~ ^{something} about your holiday.
- 1 I don't have something to do next weekend.
- 2 You don't need to bring nothing else.
- 3 You can write everything you like.
- 4 I can't see no one.
- 5 I want to buy anything at the supermarket.

6 For each question, choose the correct answer.

1  Buy two cushions, **get another one free!** Today only. 

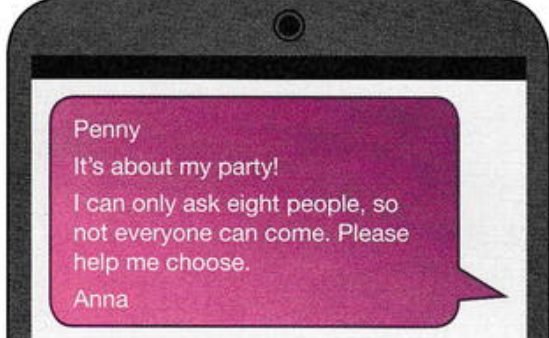
A One cushion costs the same as two.
B Other shops are more expensive than Bright's.
C The shop is not open today.

2  To: Tim From: Jackie

I didn't hear anything from Sally about our bike ride this afternoon. Did she call you? Are we still going? Let me know.

Why did Jackie write this email?

- A to invite Tim on a bike ride
B to find out where Tim is today
C to ask Tim what's happening later

3  Penny: It's about my party! I can only ask eight people, so not everyone can come. Please help me choose. Anna

- A Anna only wants eight friends to come to her party.
B All Anna's friends can come to her party.
C Anna wants Penny to help her decide who to ask.

4  **Wanted**
Desk lamp, 30–40 cm tall.
Phone Jo any time after 6 pm.
01632 960054

- A Jo doesn't need her desk lamp anymore.
B Jo would like to buy a desk lamp from someone.
C Jo can answer calls about her desk lamp during the day.

READING

- 1 Look at the photos. In pairs, discuss the questions. What do you think these three people do? What do you think their favourite places are?
- 2 Read the article. Match the photos A-C to the artists in the article. What is each artist's favourite place?



Artists' FAVOURITE PLACES



1 Gemma Blake, *painter*

Last summer, I spent four weeks on the north-west coast of Scotland in a little house by the sea. In the evenings, I sat by the open window and listened to the sound of the wind and the waves. It was wonderful. After breakfast, when I went out to paint and draw, I always had lots of ideas for pictures. Most days, I didn't see anyone except my neighbour. He was a fisherman. He really liked my work, and I sold him a drawing for his wall.

2 Susie Grey, *singer-songwriter*

I grew up in a small town in Canada. My grandma took me for walks and told me everything about the animals and plants there. When I was 19, I went to music school in Toronto. At first, I loved the big city. Then I started writing my own songs about, guess what, nature in and around my home town. So, five years ago, I moved back, and now I don't want to live anywhere else.

3 Paul Davidson, *dancer*

I started dancing when I was very young. It was hard work, but I was good, and I danced with famous companies in Russia, the USA and Europe. I didn't really have a home, so when I had enough money I bought a tiny flat in London. I love it there. The world of dance is busy and tiring, and it's great to be able to get back to my flat. I close the door, lie on my bed and listen to music.



- 3 Read the article again and answer the questions.

- 1 What did Gemma hear when she sat next to the open window?
- 2 What did she do in the mornings?
- 3 What did the fisherman buy from her?
- 4 What did Susie learn from her grandma?
- 5 Why and when did she move away from home?
- 6 What does she write songs about?
- 7 Why did Paul travel to so many countries?
- 8 What did he spend his money on?
- 9 What does he do when he gets home?



TALKING POINTS

Where is your favourite place? Why? Describe it to your partner.

VOCABULARY

Free-time activities

- 1 Match the verbs in box A to the words and phrases in box B. The verbs can be used more than once.

EP

A draw listen to paint play
read write

B a blog computer games a diary
the drums the guitar magazines
music pictures songs stories

- 2 Write eight sentences using words from box A and box B in Exercise 1.

Give your sentences to your partner and check each other's.

Everyone came to my place last night and we played computer games and listened to music.

LISTENING

1 Listen to three teenagers, George, Abby and Jo, talking about their favourite places. Look at the photos A-C. Match the teenagers to their favourite places. Write the letters in column 1 of the table.

2 Listen again. What do they like doing in their special places? Write the answers in column 2 of the table.



	1 Place	2 What they like doing there
George		
Abby		
Jo		



WRITING

PREPARE TO WRITE

A description of a favourite place

GET READY Read about Tom's favourite place.

- Where is it?
- What does he like doing there?

Read the text again and underline *because* and *so*. Think about how Tom uses these words to join ideas in a sentence.

My favourite place is the beach. I like going there in the afternoons because all my friends go there then. I like feeling the sand under my feet, so I take off my shoes and walk along the beach. I love the sound of the birds and the sound of the sea. It's amazing!



Now join these sentences using *so* or *because*.

- 1 I'm wearing my coat _____ it's very cold.
- 2 The bus didn't come on time, _____ we were late for school.
- 3 I was tired, _____ I went to bed.
- 4 Sorry, I can't come this evening _____ I've got lots of homework.

PLAN Make notes about your favourite place.

- Where is it?
- Why is it special for you?
- What do you have there?
- What do you like doing there?

WRITE Write a paragraph of about 50 words about your favourite place. Include *because* and *so* in your writing.

IMPROVE In pairs, read your own paragraph and your partner's. Check for mistakes.

Give your partner two ideas to make their text better. Use your partner's advice and rewrite your paragraph.

LIFE SKILLS PHYSICAL WELL-BEING

SAFETY AT HOME



LIFE SKILLS

Safety at home

What is safety at home?

- Being careful with hot drinks or hot food
- Taking care with broken glass
- Never leaving things on stairs

1 Look at the signs and answer the questions.



- 1 What do you think each sign means?
- 2 Where can you see each sign?
- 3 What does a fire extinguisher do?

2 Look at the photos. Match the photos A-G to the words 1-7.

- | | | |
|-----------|----------|-----------|
| 1 lighter | 4 heater | 6 stairs |
| 2 rug | 5 iron | 7 matches |
| 3 knives | | |



Talk about the things you have in your home. How can these things be dangerous?

3 Read the text quickly. Match the words in the box to the paragraphs. Do you follow these tips at home?

Burns Cuts Falls

TIPS TO BE SAFE

AT HOME

Homes are wonderful places. We can rest, study, play games and spend time with our friends and family in our homes, but there are dangers there too.

Here are some ideas to help keep safe and happy at home.



1

- › Be careful in the kitchen – hot food and hot drinks can burn you.
- › Cookers can be dangerous – take care.
- › Don't touch a hot iron or heater.
- › Be careful with matches and lighters.
- › It is a good idea to keep a fire extinguisher at home.

2

- › Don't leave books, bags, shoes or other things on the stairs.
- › Turn the light on when you use the stairs.
- › Don't run upstairs or downstairs.
- › Make sure rugs don't move.
- › Be careful when the floor is wet.
- › Don't stand on chairs or tables.



3

- › Use scissors and knives carefully.
- › Be careful with broken glass or mirrors.
- › Don't touch sharp, metal objects.



WHAT TO DO IN AN EMERGENCY

Keep a list of emergency telephone numbers in a special place at home or on your mobile phone. Are you hurt? Ask a parent or teacher for help, or call the emergency services.

4 Look at the text again. Then choose the correct answers to complete the sentences.

- 1 It's dangerous to _____ lighters and matches wrongly.
a touch b use c have
- 2 Cookers get _____. You can burn yourself.
a cold b hot c fire
- 3 It's a good idea to keep a _____ at home for emergencies.
a lighter b heater c fire extinguisher
- 4 It's not a good idea to leave _____ on the stairs.
a a rug b shoes and books c a desk
- 5 Be careful! You can _____ down the stairs.
a burn yourself b cut yourself c fall
- 6 It's dangerous to play with _____ and scissors.
a knives b rugs c glasses

5 Match the **highlighted** words in the text to the meanings.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| 1 iron | a this cuts things easily |
| 2 heater | b you use this on clothes |
| 3 rug | c this warms the air |
| 4 sharp | d you can see yourself in this |
| 5 mirror | e this stops fires |
| 6 fire extinguisher | f a soft piece of material that covers the floor |



TALKING POINTS

Do you think safety is important at home and at school? How can you make schools and homes safer?



6 Listen to someone talking to a class at school and choose the correct answers.

- 1 Who is visiting the class?
a a police officer b a firefighter
- 2 What are the students learning to use?
a the internet b a fire extinguisher

7 In pairs, try to remember the answers to these questions.

- 1 Why is it dangerous to use matches and lighters?
- 2 What can you do with a fire extinguisher?
- 3 Can hot soup be dangerous?
- 4 Why do you need to be careful with cookers, irons and heaters?
- 5 Is it a good idea to dry your clothes on heaters? Why / Why not?
- 6 What can you leave next to the phone or on your smartphone?



Listen again and check.



8 Now listen again and choose the correct words.



USEFUL LANGUAGE

- 1 It's not a *good / bad* idea to use lighters and matches without adults around.
- 2 You need to *use wrongly / be careful with* hot irons.
- 3 Some heaters and cookers *can burn you / put out* fires.
- 4 It's *good to have / Don't keep* emergency numbers next to the phone.

PROJECT

A safety leaflet

In small groups, write a leaflet about safety at home.

- Choose a title for your leaflet.
- Think of some ways to stay safe at home.
- Find some pictures.
- Choose a good design.
- Put it all together.
- Present your leaflet to another group. Take turns.



REVIEW 2

UNITS 5-8

VOCABULARY

1 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 0 The *ferry* / *plane* arrived at the airport at ten thirty.
- 1 It's dark in here. Can you turn on the *lamp* / *pillow*?
- 2 Don't walk on the *ceiling* / *floor*. The paint is wet.
- 3 My dad's a *mechanic* / *farmer*. He keeps sheep and cows.
- 4 That's a beautiful *palace* / *statue* of two children.
- 5 I keep my *diary* / *passport* in my bag. I like to write in it every day.
- 6 It's very cold in here. Can you lend me a *carpet* / *blanket*?
- 7 There are lots of *bosses* / *customers* in the shop today. It's very busy.
- 8 We usually travel to London by *staff* / *coach*. It's cheaper than the train.

2 Match the verbs to the nouns.

- | | |
|---------|--------------|
| 1 ride | a a blog |
| 2 cross | b pictures |
| 3 join | c a bike |
| 4 stay | d a club |
| 5 play | e a match |
| 6 write | f a river |
| 7 draw | g at a hotel |

3 Match the words in the box to the sentences.

blanket building cook cupboard
map office ~~shop assistants~~ square
stairs suitcase tourists

- 0 These people help you in a shop. *shop assistants*
- 1 You can keep things in here.
- 2 You can find places in a city on this.
- 3 These are people on holiday.
- 4 Your school and your house are examples of this.
- 5 People work in this place.
- 6 This person does a job preparing food.
- 7 You can go up and down these.
- 8 You can pack your clothes in this.
- 9 This keeps you warm.
- 10 This is an open space in a town or city.

GRAMMAR

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.



- 1 Your birthday party was great. *Do* / *Did* everyone have a good time?
- 2 I went with my friends to the mountains and we *climb* / *climbed* the hill.
- 3 Yesterday was my birthday and I *had* / *got* a computer.
- 4 Please, can you bring *something* / *somewhere* to the picnic?



Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 5 Last summer, I went to the United States. Some days it was hot but on others it rain.
- 6 Today, we watched a football game but my sister don't like it very much.
- 7 At my party, I danced, singed and ate and drank a lot of things.
- 8 I didn't do nothing special.

2 Write the past simple of the verbs.

- | | |
|---------|-------------|
| 0 come | <i>came</i> |
| 1 begin | _____ |
| 2 buy | _____ |
| 3 catch | _____ |
| 4 fly | _____ |
| 5 give | _____ |
| 6 meet | _____ |
| 7 sleep | _____ |
| 8 swim | _____ |
| 9 ride | _____ |
| 10 take | _____ |

3 Make sentences or questions about the past.

- 0 they / come / yesterday?
Did they come yesterday?
- 1 I / not / see / that film / last night.
- 2 They / can / cycle / 50 km / in a day.
- 3 you / get / an email / this morning?
- 4 She / not / sleep / in a tent / on her holiday.
- 5 they / clean / their classroom / last week?
- 6 He / travel / to India / last winter.
- 7 We / not / stay / in a hotel / in London.
- 8 she / have / a computer / in her room?

READING

1 For each question, choose the correct answer.

1

Petra

Munich's great! Yesterday, we did some shopping after we finished sightseeing. Today, we went to a lake to do water sports. How's your holiday going?

Bella

What did Bella do first?

- A sightseeing
- B water sports
- C shopping

2

School trip to London, 26th June.

Put your names here if you want to come.
£25, including coach tickets and lunch.

Please pay Miss James by 28th May.

- A Students need to ask Miss James for information about the trip.
- B Students need to bring something for lunch on 26th June.
- C Students don't need to pay for the school trip until 28th May.

3

Stella

Dad says there are no buses to the park today, and he can't drive me there. Can I come in your car?

Vicky

Why did Vicky write this message?

- A to say where Stella can catch the bus
- B to ask Stella for some help
- C to tell Stella how to get to the park

4

Hilltop Hotel

Swimming pool free for hotel guests – £5.00 for everyone else.

- A Everyone who wants to swim needs to pay £5.00.
- B Only hotel guests can use the swimming pool.
- C People staying here don't need to pay to swim.

5

MEETING – TUESDAY 12.15 PM

Information for everyone doing work experience next term

(see school website for a list of possible places to work)

This notice tells students

- A when they can find out about doing work experience.
- B about a change in the time of an important meeting.
- C to let the school know about their work experience plans.

6

Ethan

I'm so excited about coming camping with you and your family this weekend! Let me know if there's anything special I need to pack.

Liam

What does Liam want to know?

- A what he should bring.
- B where they are going.
- C who is coming camping.

SPEAKING

1 Put the words in order to make questions.

- 1 live / you / flat / house / or / a / do / in / a / ?
- 2 rooms / home / how / your / there / many / are / in / ?
- 3 you / do / brothers / sisters / and / have / how many / ?
- 4 big / bedroom / or / your / is / small / ?

In pairs, ask and answer the questions. Take turns to speak.

2

In pairs, talk about your room. Take turns to speak.

Tell me about your room.

The walls are white and the carpet is blue. There are some shelves with ...

9

CLOTHES AND FASHION



ABOUT YOU

What clothes do you like wearing in summer and in winter?

What are your favourite clothes? Why?

What colour are they?

VOCABULARY

AND

READING

Clothes

1 Match the photos of clothes A-L to the words in the box.

EP

boots cap gloves jumper
scarf socks suit
sunglasses swimming costume
swimming shorts tie trainers



Listen and check. Then repeat.

2

EP

Look at the photos. Who is wearing **pale** yellow clothes and who is wearing **bright** yellow clothes?



3

Which clothes in Exercise 1 are:

bright red? pale blue? bright blue?
pale grey? black and purple? black?
pink? pale green?

4

Find pale and bright things in the classroom. Tell your partner.

5

Read the blog and match the clothes A-L in Exercise 1 to the people.

6

What are their best buys? Who doesn't have a best buy?

7


Read the blog again and answer the questions.

- 1 When did Samuel get his boots?
- 2 Did Megan need the jumper for her holiday?
- 3 Why did Ed get a suit and tie?
- 4 How is Isaac's holiday different from Megan's?
- 5 Amelia bought a swimming costume. Who else got one?

8

Think back over the last few months. What was your best buy? Tell your partner.

WHAT'S YOUR BEST BUY?

 Tell us about your cool clothes!

Samuel08

March 22 at 11.06



I just love clothes! My best buy last year was a pair of bright red boots. Cool! I wanted to get some like my brother's. His are green, but now I like mine best. I'm wearing them right now.

Megan33

March 22 at 12.30



I got my best buy yesterday! My parents bought me warm things for my skiing holiday – socks, gloves and a scarf. Then I saw an amazing black and purple jumper with pockets. I don't really need it, but I bought it anyway.

Ed14

March 22 at 13.13



Your clothes sound amazing! Mine are all so boring! Dad takes me shopping, and he buys me what *he* likes. Yuk. Last week he bought me a pale grey suit and a pale green tie for my cousin's wedding! They're just like his! Can you believe it! You're both so lucky.

Isaac60

March 22 at 13.25



Tell your dad it's great he wants to buy your clothes for you, but say *you* want to choose them sometimes. I got things for a holiday. I got pale blue swimming shorts and sunglasses. Oh, and black trainers – the best thing is a bright blue cap!

Amelia55

March 22 at 14.20



What great clothes – except the suit (sorry, Ed!). My sister and I always like the same clothes and our best buys last summer were swimming costumes! Mine is pink and hers is green. They look great!

GRAMMAR

Pronouns and determiners

1 Complete the sentences with the pronouns below.

hers his mine ours theirs yours

Determiners

They're **my** trainers.

Are they **your** swimming shorts?

It's **his** jumper.

Are they **her** gloves?

It's **its** blanket.

It's **our** clothes blog.

They're **their** swimming costumes.

Pronouns

They're mine.

Are they _____?

It's _____.

Are they _____.

-

It's _____.

They're _____.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 146

2 Find all the pronouns in the blog in Exercise 5.

3 Complete the sentences with pronouns.

- 0 I'm sure those gloves are mine. I bought them yesterday.
- 1 Hey you two, are these caps _____? I found them under the table.
- 2 I hate going shopping for jackets with Ed. He doesn't like pockets on _____, but most jackets have them.
- 3 Samuel bought red boots not green ones, so I don't think those green boots are _____.
- 4 Megan and Isaac both love the colour grey, so I'm sure those grey scarves are _____.
- 5 Are all these _____? We've got so many clothes!
- 6 Excuse me. Are these sunglasses _____? I think you dropped them.

4 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.



- 1 You can borrow **me** book.
- 2 I think you can buy a pair of trainers like **my**.
- 3 I like it because **it** colour is bright blue.
- 4 The cap isn't **my**. It's **my** brother's.
- 5 The clothes on the bed are all **your**.

5 Work in small groups. Ask and answer questions about the things you have on your desk. Use these words to help you.

Is this yours?

Yes, it's mine.

No, it isn't mine. It's his / hers / yours / theirs.

It's long and thin and it's bright green. It's a

crayon and you use it to draw and colour in.

Is this your textbook?

Yes, it's mine.

Are these pens yours?

No, they're not mine. They're hers.

READING

- 1 Look at the photos A-E. Which item of clothing do you like the best? Why?
- 2 Read the article and match the photos A-E to the paragraphs 1-5.

THEY'RE MADE OF ... WHAT?



Are you wearing a pair of leather boots? Is your jumper made of wool? Are your shorts made of cotton? Sorry, that's not cool! You need to wear clothes made of something else.

A



B



D



1

What do you do with your old tin cans? Do you recycle them? What happens to them next? Well, some people use them to make clothes. This dress is made of metal from old food cans. It looks good, but maybe it's a bit noisy when you move.

2

Cork comes from the outside of some trees in countries like Portugal and Spain. We usually find corks in the top of bottles, but you can use cork for other things too. Did you know you can use it to make clothes, handbags, hats and shoes? It's very popular in the big fashion houses.

3

What do you do with your plastic knives and forks after your picnic? Do you recycle them? Do you collect them? Some people do. In fact, they make jewellery out of them. Can you believe it? This designer has made hers into an amazing hat.

4

This dress won a prize in the yearly Toilet Paper Wedding Dress contest! You need a lot of toilet paper and, of course, you don't want to go out in the rain when you're wearing it.

5

Everyone needs shoes and lots of people drive cars. When you change your car tyres, why not use the old ones to make ... shoes! They are easy and cheap to make, and they don't look bad.

E



C



3 Read the article again and choose the correct answer.

The article is about:

- a what to do with old clothes and jewellery.
- b making things to wear out of unusual things.
- c how to make cheap clothes and jewellery.

4 Now answer these questions.

- 1 What is the dress in photo B made of?
- 2 What can you make with cork?
- 3 What is the hat in photo A made of?
- 4 Why should you be careful when you wear the dress in photo C?
- 5 What are tyres usually used for?



TALKING POINTS

Would you like to wear any of the clothes and jewellery from the article? Why? / Why not?

What do you do with your old clothes when you don't wear them anymore?

VOCABULARY

Materials

- 1 Match the photos A-F to the words in the box.



cork cotton leather
metal plastic wool



Listen and check. Then repeat.

- 2 Read the article on page 60 again. Find the words in exercise 1 and underline them.
- 3 What other unusual things can we use to make clothes, shoes or jewellery? What are your clothes and shoes made of?

We can make shoes from plastic.

My jeans and socks are made of cotton, my shoes are made of leather and my jumper is made of wool.



PRONUNCIATION

Words beginning with /s/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/

- 4 Look at the words and think about the first sound. Put the words into the correct columns.

change cheese chilli
sea shirt shoes shorts
socks suit

/s/ sick /ʃ/ shower /tʃ/ chair



Listen and check. Then repeat.

- 5 Now say this!

She sees six socks and seven shirts in the suit shop.

LISTENING



- 1 Listen to three people talking about their ideas for unusual things to use to make clothes or jewellery. Complete the table.



	What is it?	What is it made of?
Henry		
Molly		
Lauren		



- 2 Listen again. Complete the sentence three times: once for Henry, once for Molly and once for Lauren. Choose *clothes* or *jewellery*.

Henry: It's a really good idea to make *clothes / jewellery* out of _____ because you've got _____ when you _____.

Molly: It's a really good idea to make *clothes / jewellery* out of _____ because you've got _____ when you _____.

Lauren: It's a really good idea to make *clothes / jewellery* out of _____ because you've got _____ when you _____.

- 3 In pairs, describe your idea for clothes made of unusual things.

It's a really good idea to ...

SPEAKING

- 1 Work in pairs. You are at a fashion show. Take turns to describe what your partner is wearing, what colour the clothes are and what they are made of.

And this is Richard. Today he's wearing dark blue cotton trousers, bright red cotton socks and pale blue sandals made of cork. His shirt is ...

10 BUYING THINGS



ABOUT YOU

Where do you do most of your shopping: online or in the shops? Which is better?
What do you buy online and what do you buy in shops? Why?

VOCABULARY

AND

READING

Buying and selling

1 Match photos A-H to the words in the box.

EP

bill cash discount price
purse receipt sale wallet



Listen and check. Then repeat.

2 Do the shopping quiz. Do you agree with the statements? Choose *yes* or *no* for each sentence.

3 Now check your answers on page 124.

4 In pairs, discuss your answers. Which of you:

- 1 buys more online than in the shops?
- 2 sometimes checks the bill?
- 3 usually shops in the sales?
- 4 carries cash in their purse or wallet?
- 5 never asks shop assistants anything?
- 6 spends more on clothes than their friends?

5 Put the words from Exercise 1 into the correct columns.

Countable nouns (C)

Uncountable nouns (U)

What kind of shopper? are you

Choose *yes* or *no* and find out.

1	I look at the price before I buy expensive things, like some shoes.	Yes / No
2	I'm not interested in any discounts. I want to buy the best.	Yes / No
3	I make sure I keep a few receipts from my shopping.	Yes / No
4	I don't buy much in the shops, only a few things a month.	Yes / No
5	I usually buy a lot of T-shirts and tops in the sales.	Yes / No
6	I often ask the shop assistant for some advice on what to buy.	Yes / No
7	I always check the bills when I eat in cafés or restaurants.	Yes / No
8	I never have any cash in my wallet or purse. I spend money quickly.	Yes / No
9	I don't buy CDs, but I share a lot of music with my friends.	Yes / No
10	I spend a bit of time every week looking at clothes online.	Yes / No



GRAMMAR

some, any, a lot of, a few, a bit of

- 1 Read the sentences from the quiz. Then complete the rules with *countable*, *uncountable* or *countable and uncountable*.

I look at the price before I buy expensive things, like **some** shoes.

I often ask the shop assistant for **some** advice on what to buy.

I'm not interested in **any** discounts.

I never have **any** cash in my wallet or purse.

I usually buy **a lot of** clothes, like T-shirts and tops, in the sales.

I share **a lot of** music with my friends.

I make sure I keep **a few** receipts from my shopping.

I spend **a bit of** time looking at clothes online.

- We use **some** in positive sentences with _____ nouns.
- We use **any** in negative sentences with _____ nouns.
- We use **a lot of** in positive sentences with _____ nouns.
- We use **a few** in positive sentences with _____ nouns.
- We use **a bit of** in positive sentences with _____ nouns.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 147

- 2 Match the photos A-D to the sentences.



- He's got **a bit of** pizza.
- He's got **a few** books.
- He's got **a lot of** pizza.
- He's got **a lot of** books.

- 3 Look at the photos. Complete the sentences with *a bit of*, *a few* or *a lot of*.



- There are _____ socks on the bed.
- There's _____ cake left.
- There are _____ eggs in the fridge.
- There are _____ books on the shelf.
- He's got _____ money in his wallet.
- I only ate _____ breakfast this morning.



PRONUNCIATION

Weak forms: /ə/



- 4 Listen and repeat.

- Can I have a bit of your burger?
- He took a few photos.
- A lot of people came.

- 5 In pairs, take it in turns to read the answers from Exercise 3.

- 6 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.



- Please can you bring a pencils for drawing.
- I want to buy a clothes. Can you help me?
- I'm phoning to tell you a few good news.
- You only need to bring a shorts and a T-shirt.
- I'm sorry, but I haven't got some cash.

- 7 Write six sentences about your shopping habits using *some*, *any*, *a lot of*, *a few* or *a bit of*.

In pairs, compare your sentences and check you are using the grammar correctly. Are any of your partner's statements true for you?

READING

- 1 What ideas can you think of for an online business? Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- 2 Look at the photos of the two young business people. Read and complete the information:

1

NAME: _____

COUNTRY: _____

NAME OF BUSINESS: _____

TYPE OF BUSINESS: _____

2


NAME: _____

COUNTRY: _____


NAME OF BUSINESS: _____

TYPE OF BUSINESS: _____

TWO YOUNG ENTREPRENEURS TO WATCH



Cory Nieves, or Mr Cory, is from the United States. He started his business when he was six years old because he was tired of getting the bus to school. He wanted to make some money to help his mum, Lisa, buy a car. First, Mr Cory sold hot chocolate in front of his home in New Jersey. He did well, and he began to sell other things too, like lemonade and cookies. Mr Cory and his mum tried a lot of different recipes for cookies. Then, one day they baked some perfect chocolate chip cookies. Now they bake a lot of different cookies and sell them on his website mrcoryscookies.com. You can also buy them from shops. The cookies are all natural, and Mr Cory and his mum still try the recipes at home before they sell them to customers. Mr Cory also works with organisations that help young people in the United States.



Bella Tipping is Australian. She got the idea for her website while she was on holiday with her family in the US, when she was 12 years old. Bella and her mum talked about their experience. Her mum said the vacation was great. When Bella didn't agree her mum was really surprised. Bella said a lot of things in the hotels and restaurants were for adults not children. The places didn't think about what children wanted or needed. So, Bella started her website called Kidzcationz, where children can post their reviews of hotels and restaurants. Now, when families are planning their holidays and looking for places to stay and eat, they can look at the Kidzcationz website first to see which places are best for children.

- 3 Read the articles again and answer the questions.

- 1 Why did Cory want his mum to buy a car?
- 2 What did Cory sell before he sold the cookies?
- 3 What kind of cookies did they make first?
- 4 What do Cory and his mum still do?
- 5 How old was Bella when she had the idea for Kidzcationz?
- 6 What surprised Bella's mum after the holiday?
- 7 What was the problem with the hotels and restaurants?
- 8 How can families use Kidzcationz?



TALKING POINTS

Which do you think is a better idea: Mr Cory's Cookies or Kidzcationz? Tell your partner.

VOCABULARY

Phrases with *for*

1 Look at the sentences with *for*.

- EP** Cory sells his cookies **for just over a dollar each**.
 People often buy cookies **for parties**.
 People can order cookies online **for the next day**.
 Cory is well-known **for his website** Mr Cory's Cookies.
 What's British English **for 'cookies'**?

Match the **phrases with *for*** to the meanings:

- | | |
|------------------|------------|
| 1 time | 4 occasion |
| 2 the meaning of | 5 reason |
| 3 payment | |

2 Now match the two halves of the sentences.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1 People don't pay | a for 'vacation'? |
| 2 Australia is famous | b for her 14th birthday. |
| 3 Let's book a table | c for its beaches and amazing countryside. |
| 4 What's another word | d for the information on Bella's website. |
| 5 Bella went out with friends | e for lunch. |

3 Complete the sentences. Use the words and phrases in the box.

entrepreneur its tasty cookies her birthday
 tomorrow two pounds

- How many oranges can I buy for _____?
- I want to buy my sister some jewellery for _____.
- This shop is famous for _____.
- You need to do your English homework for _____, please.
- What's the word in your language for _____?

LISTENING



1 For each question, choose the correct answer.

- Two friends are talking at the shopping centre. Why is the boy at the shopping centre?
 A His computer's not working.
 B He wants to visit a new shop.
 C He always gets his shopping there.
- A boy, Adam, is talking about shopping. What did he buy?
 A some fruit
 B a dog
 C some bread
- A woman is talking to her daughter about a present for her son, Matt. What is the present?
 A something for Matt to wear
 B something that Matt asked for
 C something Matt needs for school
- Two friends are talking at one of the friend's houses. What is the boy doing?
 A He's reading his homework diary.
 B He's looking at websites.
 C He's doing his homework.
- A teacher is talking to the class about a school trip. What is he telling them to do?
 A get to school early
 B bring T-shirts
 C wear warm clothes

WRITING



PREPARE TO WRITE

A story

GET READY You're going to write a story about a problem you had buying something online, beginning with this sentence: *I wanted to buy a _____, so I looked on the internet. I found one on this fantastic website and ...*. Read the story about Chris and his jacket on page 124. Find and underline these words in the story: *after that*, *after* (*two weeks*), (*six days*) *later* and *finally*.

PLAN In your story, you tried to buy something online and there was a problem. Read the questions and make notes.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 What did you want to buy? Describe it and say why you liked it. | 4 What happened when it arrived? What was wrong with it? |
| 2 How did you buy it? Did you use cash? | 5 What did you do? |
| 3 How long did it take to arrive? | 6 What happened at the end of the story? |

WRITE Write your story in about 50 words. Try to link the events in your story with the words *after that*, *after*, *later* and *finally*. Start with the sentence in *Get ready*.

IMPROVE In pairs, read your own story and your partner's. Check for mistakes. Give your partner two ideas to make their story better. Use your partner's advice and rewrite your story.

CULTURE

SHOPPING

- 1 In pairs, discuss the questions with your partner.
 - 1 Is your home or school near a shopping centre, farmers' market or charity shop?
 - 2 How are small shops and shopping centres different?
- 2 Read about shopping in different countries. Where do you do your shopping?

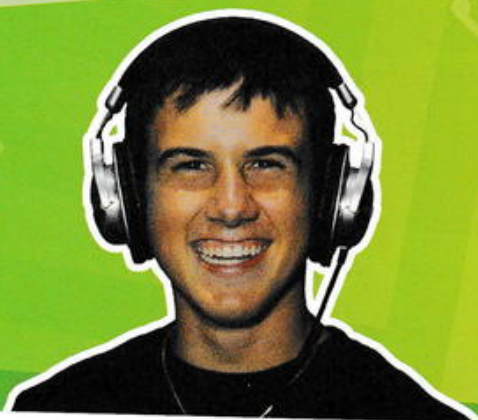
FACTFILE Shopping

Shopping is an important part of people's lives. People often want to buy different things at good prices. In English-speaking countries, these types of shops are popular:

- ★ **Charity shops:** People give these shops clothes, books and other things they don't use or want anymore. These shops then sell these things to other people. Charity shops give the money they make to help others.
- ★ **Farmers' markets:** In these markets, farmers sell fruit, vegetables, cheese, honey and other local items.
- ★ **Shopping centres:** These are big, modern buildings with lots of shops and places to eat. In the United States, shopping centres are called 'malls'.

SHOPPING SURVEY

We asked three teens in three different countries 'Where do you do your shopping?'
Here are their answers.



1 **Mark, age 14**
📍 Seattle, USA

Where: Northgate Mall, near Seattle

Why? I shop at Northgate Mall because there are lots of different stores and places to eat. I like listening to music and there is an excellent choice of **technology** stores in the mall. I also like Northgate Mall because it is near my house and I can walk or cycle there. I don't have a lot of pocket money, but I don't mind because I can look at things in different shops and go **window shopping**!

2 **Karen, age 13**
📍 Dublin, Ireland

Where: Charity shops on Camden Street, Dublin

Why? I haven't got a lot of pocket money, so I need to shop carefully. Every **penny** counts! One way I save money is shopping at charity shops. I love going shopping in Dublin and I really love Camden Street. Some of the charity shops only have clothes people **donate**, but others have jewellery, other **accessories** and furniture.



3 **Darren, age 13**
📍 Ta' Qali, Malta

Where: Farmers' Market near Mdina

Why? I love cooking and sometimes I go with my mum and dad to the Ta' Qali Farmers' Market to get fresh fruit and vegetables. The food at the market is from **local** farms and my parents say the prices are great. We buy special Maltese honey at the Farmers' Market for making sweets. I have yoghurt, fruit and honey for breakfast every morning.





3 Match the texts (1–3) in Exercise 2 to the photos (A–C).



4 Read the texts again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (X)?

- 1 There are not a lot of technology stores at the mall.
- 2 Mark walks or cycles to the mall.
- 3 Karen likes shopping in Camden Street in Dublin.
- 4 Charity shops only sell clothes.
- 5 The Farmers' Market in Ta' Qali sells food from local farms.
- 6 Darren likes eating honey and yoghurt in the morning.

5 Complete the sentences with the **highlighted** words in the texts.

- 1 When I go to the centre of town, I love going _____. I don't buy anything but I look at lots of products.
- 2 I like buying _____ fruit and vegetables at the Farmers' Market. That way, I help small businesses and farmers from the area.
- 3 I'm taking some clothes to the charity shop to _____ them.
- 4 I love shopping for hats, scarves, sunglasses and other _____.
- 5 I need to save every _____ of my pocket money to buy a concert ticket next month.
- 6 I need a new phone. This afternoon my mum is taking me to a _____ store to see some different phones.



TALKING POINTS

Do you ever shop at any of the places in the survey?
Where is your favourite place to do your shopping? Why?



6 Listen to Gemma talking to two people about shopping. Tick the correct answers.

- 1 Leo likes shopping ...
 - a at charity shops.
 - b at the Farmers' Market.
 - c at the shopping centre.
- 2 Gemma's mum likes shopping ...
 - a at charity shops.
 - b at the Farmers' Market.
 - c at the shopping centre.



7 Listen again and match the two halves of the sentences.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1 Leo is ... | a window shopping at the shopping centre. |
| 2 Leo likes ... | b three times a week. |
| 3 Leo goes shopping ... | c fruit and vegetables. |
| 4 Leo sometimes buys | d music magazines. |
| 5 Gemma's mum goes shopping ... | e 13 years old. |
| 6 She likes ... | f cheese. |
| 7 She always buys ... | g the local products and the prices. |
| 8 Gemma and her dad love ... | h at weekends. |

PROJECT

A survey

In small groups, prepare and carry out a shopping survey.

- Think of five or six questions for your shopping survey. Ask questions about:
 - Where people shop
 - Why they shop there
 - When they shop
 - What they buy
- Write down the shopping survey questions.
- Compare your questions with another group's questions.
- Ask members of a different group your questions and record the results.
- After school, ask two friends in another class or family members about where they shop.
- Tell the class what you found out.

11 EATING OUT

VOCABULARY AND READING

Food

1 Look at the restaurant advertisements. Match the things in the photos A-M to the words in the box.

EP

burger chicken legs cola cream fresh vegetables grapes lemonade mineral water
pasta with tomato sauce mushroom salad soft drinks strawberry



ABOUT YOU

How often do you eat out?
Which do you prefer – restaurant food or home-cooked food?
What is 'fast food'? Do you ever eat it?



Pizza PALACE

Come and have your party here in our party room – space for 30 people!

Party Menu

PIZZAS

Cheese and tomato, Mushroom

PASTA

with tomato sauce

DESSERT

Ice cream, (vanilla, chocolate or strawberry) – eat as much you want!

SOFT DRINKS

Orangeade, lemonade, cola

PRICE
£10.00
per person

Call us six months before your party to book – we are very popular!
Birthday cake available.

Fantastic party room
– 30 people

EASY
BURGERS

We play all your favourite music videos while you eat!

PARTY MENU

PRICE £13.00
PER PERSON

Main course



Chicken legs
Fresh vegetables or salad
Burger
Rice or chips



DESSERT

Fruit salad and cream
Cheesecake



DRINKS

Fruit juice or lemonade
Mineral water



Our parties are very popular – book six months before your birthday.



ORDER OUR CHEF'S AMAZING BIRTHDAY CAKE.

2 Complete the phrases with one or two food words from the food in the menus in Exercise 1.

a bowl of _____ a piece of _____
a glass of _____ a slice of _____
a bottle of _____ a plate of _____

3 Look at the menus in Exercise 1 again. In pairs, say which foods you like and don't like. Then say what you'd like to eat or drink right now!

I like salad.

Me too.

I want to eat a bowl of fruit salad now.

4 Read the advertisements again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (X)?

- The party room at Pizza Palace is smaller than the one at Easy Burgers.
- You can watch something while you eat at Easy Burgers.
- The food at Easy Burgers looks healthier.
- Pizza Palace is more expensive than Easy Burgers.
- The menu at Easy Burgers is longer than the one at Pizza Palace.
- Easy Burgers and Pizza Palace are both popular.

1 Read what Nicky thinks and complete the sentences with *the same* or *different*.

- 1 We use *as ... as* to say that two things are _____.
- 2 We use *not as ... as* to say that two things are _____.

2 Compare the pairs of things using *as ... as* or *not as ... as*.

- 0 oranges ... lemons
Oranges are as healthy as lemons. / Lemons are not as sweet as oranges.
- 1 trains ... buses *comfortable / slow*
- 2 maths ... English *easy / interesting*
- 3 cats ... dogs *friendly / noisy*
- 4 your country ... the UK *hot / big*
- 5 Cristiano Ronaldo (born 1985) ... young / famous
Marcus Rashford (born 1997)



Comparative adjectives

3 Read the rules. Write the comparative forms of the adjectives in the box and then complete the table.

beautiful busy cold dirty exciting fat funny hard hot large late
long new popular tall thin

Short adjectives

one syllable	one syllable ending in e	two syllables ending in y	one syllable ending in vowel consonant
add <i>-er</i>	add <i>-r</i>	change y to <i>-ier</i>	double the last letter and add <i>-er</i>
short - shorter	nice - nicer	healthy - healthier	big - bigger

Long adjectives

use *more* + adjective
expensive - *more expensive*

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 148

4 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 1 The tickets for adults cost £25, but the tickets for students are more cheaper.
- 2 The concert is very bigger and has lots of famous singers.
- 3 This bag is not big as my last one.
- 4 It's cold here so bring some warmer clothes.
- 5 I was more luckier than my friends.
- 6 My drink was not expensive as yours.

5 Think of two different things for each category.

- 1 sports *football, tennis*
- 2 foods
- 3 ways of travelling
- 4 jobs
- 5 things you wear
- 6 restaurants you go to

In pairs, write sentences to compare the two things. Use adjectives from Exercise 3 and any other adjectives you know. Work in groups and check each other's sentences.

Football is more exciting than tennis. Tennis is harder to learn than football.

READING

- 1 Look at the title of the article and the photos. Where do you think the food in the photos comes from? Read the article quickly and compare your ideas with your partner's.



STREET FOOD AROUND THE WORLD



1 In lots of countries around the world street food is very popular. In India, you can get different kinds of **curry** made with meat or with vegetables and lots of **chilli**. On the streets of Thailand, you can get fish soup, **omelettes**, rice or **noodles** and **grilled meat**. For dessert, you can have fried bananas, fresh fruit **pancakes** or Thai **sweets**. Mexico is famous for its wonderful tacos served with salsa made of green onions, cucumber and tomatoes. In Germany and Denmark, you can have meat served with bread and **fried onions**, and in France they serve lovely pancakes called **crêpes**. At the seaside in many countries, people eat **chips**, ice cream or **seafood**.

2 In many ways, street food is better than restaurant food. It's much cheaper, and you know it's fresh because you watch the chef prepare and cook it in front of you. It's also more fun to eat – you can use your hands and not worry about what the waiter thinks of you! People often buy and eat food outside at music festivals and at sports events like football matches. There are also street food festivals in many cities. People can try new food from around the world at these festivals.

- 2 Read the article again and answer the questions.

- Which countries are famous for street food? What kind of street food do they have?
- What three things does the writer like about street food?
- At what sort of events do people eat street food?
- What happens at street food festivals?

- 3 Do you agree with the writer that street food is better than restaurant food? Why / Why not?

VOCABULARY

Food

- 1 Match the photos A-J to the **words** in paragraph 1 in the article.

EP



TALKING POINTS

- 07 Watch the video. Ask and answer the questions with a partner.
- Would you like to try any of the street food in the photos? Why / Why not?
- Which street foods do you have in your country?
- What's your favourite street food?

PRONUNCIATION /ʌ/ and /ɒ/

- 83 **2** Listen to the words in the box and repeat them. Listen to the sound of the underlined letters. Then put the words in the correct columns – /ʌ/ or /ɒ/.

coffee	cup	horrible
lovely	much	mushroom
omelette	one	onion
want	what	

/ʌ/	/ɒ/
cup	coffee

84 **3** Listen and check. Then repeat.

LISTENING

- 85 **1** Listen to a boy speaking to his friend Nadia. What does he want Nadia to do?



STREET FOOD FESTIVAL

1 Date: 28th and 29th _____

2 WEBSITE: WWW. _____ .COM

3 Ticket prices: Adults: £10. Under 16s: £ _____

4 Times: _____ am to midnight

5 Address: Market Square on _____ Avenue

6 How to get there: Bus number _____ or _____

- 86 **2** In pairs, practise saying these dates, prices, numbers and times. Write some more and test your partner.

3rd July	28th June	£8.50	£2.50
74	89	2 o'clock	11.30 am

- 87 **3** Listen again and complete the notes.



SPEAKING

- 86 **1** Listen to a girl talking to a food seller at the street food festival. What does she order?

- 2** Complete the conversation from Exercise 1.

Girl: Excuse me, what are you selling?

Seller: It's called paella. It's from ¹ _____. It's made with seafood, ² _____, vegetables and ³ _____.

Girl: Oh. What's it like?

Seller: It's ⁴ _____! Would you like to try some?

Girl: Yes, please. How ⁵ _____ is it?

Seller: It's £4.50 for a small plate or ⁶ £ _____ for a large plate.

Girl: I'll have a small plate, please.

Seller: That's £4.50, please.

Girl: Here you ⁷ _____.

Seller: Thanks. I hope you ⁸ _____ it!

- 86 **3** Listen again and check. Then in pairs, practise the conversation.

- 3** Work in pairs. Imagine you are at the street food festival. Student A, ask about and order the food in photos A–C. Student B, answer Student A's questions. Then swap roles and ask and answer about the food in photos D–F. Student A see page 126. Student B see page 125.

A  Barbecue 	B  Aloo Tikki 
C  Shish kebab 	D  Yakisoba 
E  Zapiekanka 	F  Ponchiki 

12 THE LATEST TECHNOLOGY

ABOUT YOU

08 Watch the video, then ask and answer the questions in pairs.

What technology do you use?

How many hours a day do you spend online?

How often do you chat to your friends online?

VOCABULARY

AND

READING

Technology

1 Match the photos A–L to the words in the box.

EP

e-reader fitness tracker games console
headphones keyboard laptop mouse
printer screen smartphone speaker tablet



Listen and check. Then repeat.

2 In small groups, ask and answer these questions.

- How many things with screens are there in your home?
- What are they, and whose are they?
- How many printers/speakers/games consoles are there? Where are they in your house?
- Have you got a smartphone? If so, what kind?

3 Read the facts about technology. Write *K* if you *knew* the information already, *S* if the information *surprises* you and *W* if it *worries* you. Then compare your answers with a partner.

4 In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- Which of the facts surprises you the most?
- Which of the facts worries you the most?



DID YOU KNOW...

The most popular games console of all time is the PlayStation 2.

Having problems falling asleep? Looking at the screen on your smartphone, laptop or tablet before bed is one of the worst things you can do. The blue light keeps you awake.

South Korea has the fastest internet in the world. That means it's the best place to watch a movie on your smartphone!

The world's earliest mouse was made of wood and had two wheels. You moved it with your hand.

IMDb is probably the oldest website on the internet. It began in 1990 and now has information on about 3.5 million movies.

Your keyboard is one of the dirtiest things in your home. Clean it often and wash your hands before you start typing!

Today, almost all of us have a smartphone for calling people or sending texts, and even the smallest ones are more powerful than the computers used to send Apollo 11 to the moon.

The world's largest and widest screen can show pictures up to 12 metres high and 50 metres across!

- 1 Look at the examples of superlative adjectives. Read *Did you know ... ?* on page 72 again and find all the superlatives.

the fastest internet in the world

the most popular games console

Short adjectives

one syllable

add *-est*

quiet - quietest

one syllable ending in e

add *-st*

nice - nicest

two syllables ending in y

change y to *-iest*

dirty - dirtiest

one syllable ending in vowel consonant

double the last letter and add *-est*

big - biggest

Long adjectives

use *the most*

use *the most* + adjective

expensive - *the most* expensive

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 149

- 2 Read the rules above and complete the table with comparatives and superlatives.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
Regular		
big	<i>bigger</i>	<i>the biggest</i>
famous	<i>more famous</i>	<i>the most famous</i>
early		
thin		
beautiful		
young		
Irregular		
good		
bad		

- 3 Complete the sentences with the superlative form of the adjectives.

- My dad has the _____ (good) computer in our house.
- My laptop is the _____ (light) one you can buy.
- The _____ (popular) website among my friends is YouTube.
- This smartphone has the _____ (big) screen of all the ones in the shop. Do you like it?
- The _____ (bad) thing about my computer is the mouse. It doesn't work properly.
- My mum's phone is the _____ (old) one in our family.

- 4 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- Football is the famous game in the world.
- The better time to come to my house is 5.30.
- The easier way to travel there is by bus.
- Wear the older clothes you've got to do this job.
- My room is the bigger in the house.


PRONUNCIATION
Stress in superlatives


- 5 Listen and repeat the words. Then put them into the correct column of the table.

the biggest the cleverest
the friendliest the most exciting
the most expensive the nicest
the quickest the worst

o0	o0o	o0oo	ooo0o
	<i>the</i>		
	<i>biggest</i>		



Listen again and check.

- 6 Look at the three mobile phones. In pairs, compare them. Use some of the adjectives in the box.

big/small cheap/expensive good/bad
heavy/light thick/thin

A: *The High Star's battery is better than the Cloud 7's battery.*

B: *The Bluebird's battery is the worst.*

	High Star	Bluebird	Cloud 7
Price	£299	£355	£450
Size	115 x 58 x 9 mm	116 x 61 x 12 mm	135 x 67 x 17 mm
Weight	130 g	142 g	155 g
Easy to use	★★★★	★★★	★
Camera	★★	★★★★	★★★
Battery	★★	★	★★★

- 7 >> Work with a partner. Go to page 124.

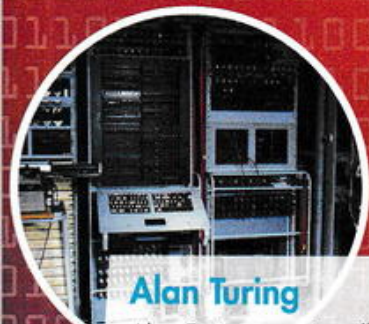
The history OF COMPUTERS



205BCE

The Antikythera Mechanism

In 1900, a group of people diving near the Greek island of Antikythera found this machine on the sea floor. For many years, no one understood what it was or how it worked. Scientists now say it was used to find out the positions of the sun, moon and stars. Many people call it the world's earliest 'computer'.



Alan Turing

Alan Turing wasn't well known when he was alive, but he's now one of the most famous scientists of the 20th century. His ideas on computer science changed the world. He worked on the first digital computer – it was called Colossus, weighed 30 tonnes, and was as big as a large living room.

From the 1950s

Modern computers

From the 1950s, computers got smaller, faster and cheaper. Today, the smallest mobile phones have more memory than the biggest early computers. And computers are getting better all the time. However, they are not perfect. One of the worst problems is computer viruses. You can lose a lot of information when one gets on your machine. Be careful about what you download from the internet.

around 2,700 BCE to today

The abacus

People still use abacuses today in many parts of the world, especially to teach maths to children. Of course, they are very different from modern computers, but the idea is the same – to answer difficult maths questions much more quickly than a human can.



1791–1871
and 1815–1852

Charles Babbage and Ada Lovelace

The modern computer was Charles Babbage's idea. The machine he wanted to build, called a 'difference engine', was special because it had all the parts that a modern computer has. It could save information and was also a kind of printer. Ada Lovelace was the first computer programmer. She had the idea for 'software' – a way of telling a computer to do different things.



READING

- 1 Do you know the names of any early computers? Read the article once and check your ideas.
- 2 Complete the sentences with one or two words from the article.
 - 1 Some children use an abacus to learn how to do _____.
 - 2 Charles Babbage's computer had several different _____.
 - 3 The first person to program a computer was _____.
 - 4 Colossus was as big as a _____.
 - 5 Modern _____ are small but can do more than the biggest computers of the past.



TALKING POINTS

Computers can now do a lot of clever things. But are they more intelligent than us? Why / Why not?

VOCABULARY

Computers and the internet

- 1** Look at the article again and find the words in the box. Match them to the definitions.

EP

digital download machine memory
save software virus

- This has moving parts and helps humans to do work.
- This is a part of a computer – it holds information.
- This is a dangerous computer program.
- You do this to make sure the computer keeps your work.
- This describes cameras, computers and clocks that record information as 0s or 1s.
- This means to copy information from the internet onto your computer.
- This is all the programs that make a computer do different things.

- 2** Match the verbs to the nouns. Then make sentences.

EP

buy	friends
chat	clothes
download	games
go	the internet
play	music
surf	online
visit	videos
watch	websites

I often chat online with my cousins.

- 3** Read the survey. Choose three or four questions and write two more of your own. Walk around the class asking your questions.

COMPUTER SURVEY

- ☐ What sort of things do you download from the internet?
- ☐ Do you know how to stop a virus from getting onto your computer?
- ☐ How much memory has your phone got? Is it enough?
- ☐ Do you ever forget to save your work?
- ☐ How often do you chat to friends online?

- 4** Write some sentences about what you found out.

Everybody downloads music and half the class downloads games from the internet.

Four people sometimes forget to save their work.

Most people chat to friends online every day.

LISTENING

91

- 1** Listen to and read the first part of the conversation and look at Question 0. Which is the correct answer: A, B or C? Why are the other two answers wrong?

Ella: Nice new laptop Andy! When did you get it?

Andy: Yesterday. My old one broke a month ago, and last week Dad agreed to buy me this.

- 0** When did Andy get his new computer?

A yesterday **B** last week **C** a month ago

91

- 2** Listen to the whole conversation. For each question, choose the correct answer.

- 1** Andy's dad bought the computer from

A a website. **B** a shop. **C** a friend.

- 2** How much did it cost?

A £150 **B** £250 **C** £2,000

- 3** What does Andy want to buy for the computer?

A a camera **B** a mouse **C** a printer

- 4** Andy doesn't use his computer to

A do homework. **B** chat to friends.

C play games.

- 5** What does Andy like most about the computer?

A the keyboard **B** the screen **C** the speakers

91

- In pairs, compare your answers. Then listen again and check your answers.**

WRITING

PREPARE TO WRITE

An email

GET READY Read the email from your friend Morgan. Why did Morgan write the email?

My laptop broke yesterday, and I need to get a new one. Tell me about your new computer. When did you get it? How much did it cost? What's the best thing about it?

Best wishes,
Morgan

PLAN Think of an answer to each of Morgan's questions.

- WRITE** Write an email to Morgan with answers to all his questions. Begin your email with *Hi Morgan*, or *Dear Morgan*, and end it with *See you soon*, or *Best wishes*, and your name. Write 25 words or more.

IMPROVE In pairs, read your email and your partner's. Check that all three questions have an answer. Give your partner two ideas to make their email better. Use your partner's advice and rewrite your email.

LIFE SKILLS ICT LITERACY

WRITING A BLOG



LIFE SKILLS

Writing a blog

A blog can help you:

- improve your computer skills
- organise your ideas
- share opinions and views with other people.

1 Look at the sentences and answer the questions.

Great minds think alike.

We can learn a lot sharing our ideas, opinions and views.

There's a blog for everyone.

- 1 What do you think the sentences mean?
- 2 Do you agree with the sentences? Why? / Why not?
- 3 Do you have a blog? Do you know any bloggers?

2 Look at the topics for blogs. Choose two topics you think are interesting. Share your ideas with a partner.

activities animals fashion food
life experiences music
special days and holidays sports travel

3 Read the text quickly. Complete the article with the headings in the box. Is it easy to start a blog?

- A Stay safe!
- B Think about your readers
- C Have one day for writing

4 Answer the questions.

- 1 What do you need to choose first?
- 2 Who do you need to think about?
- 3 What do platforms give you?
- 4 Before you put a blog post online, who looks at it?
- 5 Do you need to write posts every day?
- 6 What are some things we should not post online?

5 Complete the sentences with the highlighted words from the text. There are some letters to help you.

- 1 I ___ o ___ o ___ a blog about sports.
- 2 Choose a topic you like and you find i ___ e ___ e ___ i ___.
- 3 To start a blog, you need to choose a p ___ a ___ o ___.
- 4 It is a good idea to write a ___ o ___ once a week.
- 5 You need to decide on your topic and ___ e ___ i ___, and think about your readers.
- 6 You need to be careful online. It is not safe to post p ___ s ___ a ___ e ___ i ___ like your address or phone number.



TALKING POINTS

Do you think it's a good idea to start a blog? Why? / Why not?

Do you prefer reading a blog or reading a book?



6 Listen to Katie and David talking about blogs. Choose the correct answers to complete the sentences.

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| 1 They are at | 2 Katie's blog is on |
| a Katie's house. | a dogs. |
| b David's house. | b cats. |
| c school. | c music. |



7 Listen again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (X)?

- 1 Katie's mum is at home.
- 2 Katie is in the living room.
- 3 Katie is studying for an exam.
- 4 Katie thinks starting a blog is difficult.
- 5 Katie likes music.
- 6 Katie wants to write a post about David's pets.

8 Match the two halves of the sentences.



USEFUL LANGUAGE

- 1 You're good at ...
 - 2 It isn't safe to ...
 - 3 Is your blog ...
 - 4 Ask people ...
 - 5 Do you want a lot of people ...
- a about music?
b to follow your blog?
c before you put photos of them online.
d put personal information online.
e using computers.

DO YOU WANT TO START A BLOG?

Do you read or **follow** any blogs? What topics do you like to read about?

How about you? Have you got a blog? Why not? Now is a good time to start if your parents agree!

Follow these quick and easy steps to start your own blog.

1 Choose a topic for your blog

The first thing you need to do is choose a topic. What do you want to blog about? Your favourite sport, music or video games? Choose a topic you feel happy to talk about and find **interesting**. You've got a topic? Now choose a title and a **design** for your blog.

2

Who's going to read your blog? Is your blog for your friends and family? Is it on a special topic you and your friends like? What is interesting about it?

3 Decide on a platform

There are different free platforms to start your blog. Most platforms give easy instructions on how to start. Some popular platforms are Blogger, Medium and WordPress. Take a look and decide!

4 Write a blog post

It can sometimes be difficult to write your first blog **post**. It's a good plan to share your ideas with close friends and family before you put your post online. Don't worry if you don't like what you put online – you can always change it later. Remember, make sure people let you use their photos or information.

5

At the beginning, you can choose a day of the week to write your blog posts. It's important to write a post every week.

6

Blogs can be fun, but never put your **personal details** online. Never write your address or telephone number. Remember, you need to stay safe online.

PROJECT

Writing
a blog

In small groups, write and design a blog post:

- Choose a blog topic and think about the design for the blog.
- Write two short blog posts about the topic.
- Decide what to include with each of the posts (a photo and a link? a video?)
- Look at the design of some other blogs on a platform.
- Design how you think the posts would look on a platform.
- Share your ideas for posts and design with another group.

Don't forget, **always** check with your parents before starting a blog. Parents can help young people under the age of 13 to set up a blog.

REVIEW 3

UNITS 9–12

VOCABULARY

- 1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

bright digital discount
download keyboard pocket
tablet wallet wool

- 0 I really like that new digital camera.
1 This computer was £500 last week. Now it's £425. That's a big discount.
2 My jumper's made of wool. It's really warm!
3 My dad gave me a tablet for my birthday. And he put £20 in it!
4 I want to buy a new coat. I like that one, but it's only got one pocket.
5 The trainers are all too bright. I prefer pale colours.
6 The screen on that new computer is very small. It's difficult to see the letters.
7 Most people download music from the internet these days. They don't buy CDs or records.
8 At my new school, all the students have a laptop or a laptop. They don't have books.

- 2 Put the words in the correct column.

boots cap cola cream
e-reader gloves grapes laptop
lemonade mineral water memory
mouse mushroom noodles
omelette scarf screen socks
software speaker suit
swimming costume tie virus

Food and drink	Clothes	Technology

- 3 Use the pictures to write sentences with *for*.

I played tennis with my friend for two hours yesterday.

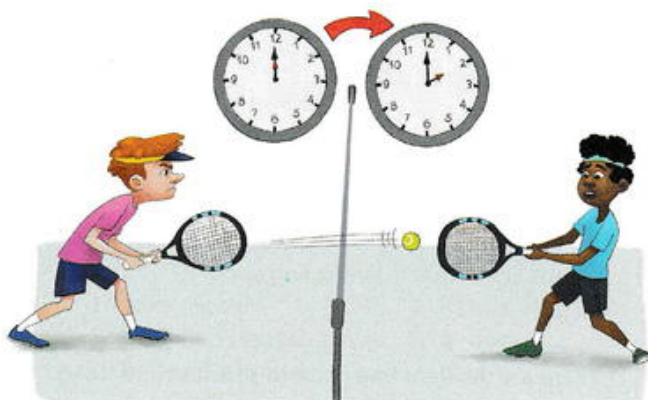
GRAMMAR

- 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 I bought a new T-shirt because *my / mine* is old.
2 Do you have *any / a* present for me?
3 I love my room because it's *bigger / biggest* than my old room.
4 You can find different bands and the *better / best* music at the festival.

- 2 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 5 You can wear *yours* sports clothes.
6 I bought a new *jeans* and a shirt.
7 I bought them because they were more *cheap* – they cost only £5 each!
8 It was the great holiday *ever*.



2 Complete the sentences with *a bit of* or *a few*.

- 0 Would you like *a bit of* chocolate?
- 1 I wrote the number down on _____ paper and now I can't find it.
- 2 We saw _____ people on the train today.
- 3 There are _____ advertisements in the newspaper.
- 4 That cake looks nice. Can I have _____ it please?
- 5 _____ companies have only online shopping.
- 6 That pizza smells good. I want to try _____ it. Don't you?
- 7 I've got _____ time. I can help you with your project.
- 8 He was sick and he stayed in bed for _____ days.

3 Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.

- 0 Oranges are *sweeter than* lemons. (sweet)
- 00 All these books are old but this one is *the oldest*. (old)
- 1 You are always _____ me! (busy)
- 2 All the students' work is good today, but yours is _____. (good)
- 3 Football is _____ sport in the UK. (popular)
- 4 I liked your story. It was _____ mine. (funny)
- 5 Our cat is _____ it was two years ago. (thin)
- 6 That café has _____ hot chocolate in town. (bad)
- 7 The chairs in this classroom are _____ (comfortable) in the school.
- 8 The new smartphones are _____ the old ones. (clever)

READING

1 Read the text and answer the question.

Tom has got three sisters – Beth, Mia and Alice. Beth is three years younger than Tom and seven years younger than Mia. Alice is the youngest. She's six years old. She's one year younger than Beth.

How old are Tom, Beth and Mia?

LISTENING



1 For each question, choose the correct answer.

- 1 Listen to two friends talking together in a shop. Why does Ruby want to buy the sunglasses?
A She's happy with the price.
B She likes the bright colour.
C They're the right size.
- 2 Listen to a man and a girl talking about what they want to eat. Where are they?
A in a café
B at a food festival
C in a supermarket
- 3 Listen to a boy talking to a girl about his laptop. What does the girl offer to do?
A lend him a laptop
B take his laptop to the repair shop
C return a laptop she borrowed
- 4 Listen to a message in a shopping centre. What change do customers need to know about?
A New discounts are available.
B There is a later closing time.
C New stores are opening soon.
- 5 Listen to a girl talking about a party. What did she like about it?
A the food
B the music
C the party room

SPEAKING

1 Put the words in order to make questions.

- 1 favourite / what / are / clothes / your / ?
- 2 where / like / you / do / shopping / go / to / ?
- 3 food / do / eat / you / what / to / like / ?
- 4 use / your / often / you / do / how / smartphone / ?

In pairs, ask and answer the questions. Take turns to speak.

2 In pairs, talk about some of your favourite things. Take turns to speak.

Tell me about some of your favourite things.

I've got a favourite pair of jeans.
I like them very much because ...

13 HEALTHY BODIES

ABOUT YOU

09 Watch the video. Then ask and answer the questions in pairs.
What was your last health problem?
When did it happen?
What did you do?

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Illness

1 Match the sentences to the photos.

- EP 1 I've got a **cold**.
2 I **hurt** my leg.
3 I've got a **broken arm**.
4 My eye **hurts**.
5 I feel **sick**.
6 I've got a **stomach ache**.
7 I've got a **temperature**.
8 I've got **toothache**.
9 I've got a **pain** in my foot.
10 I've got a **headache**.

95 Listen and check. Then repeat.

96 2 Listen to three conversations. Match the health problems to the people in the pictures.



96 3 Listen again. Match the advice to the health problems in Exercise 2. Write 1, 2 or 3.

- don't do any sports
- eat fruit and vegetables
- don't watch TV late
- go to hospital
- don't walk
- rest
- go to sleep now
- drink a lot

<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>

4 In pairs, discuss the questions.

- 1 Do you do anything that is bad for your health?
- 2 How do you want to change it?

*I play computer games for three hours a day.
I'd like to play more sport.*

- 1 Look at these examples from the conversations. Then choose the correct words to complete the rules.

You **shouldn't** walk on that leg.
You **should** go to bed.

- We use **should** and **shouldn't** to give advice / information.
- We use **should** to say something is a good / bad idea.
- We use **shouldn't** to say something is a good / bad idea.
- The verb after **should** is always / never the infinitive without 'to'.

- 2 Look at these examples from the conversations you heard on page 80. Match the questions to the answers. Notice how we make questions with **should**.

I should ... → Should I ... ?

- Should** I stop doing sport?
- Should** I take some medicine?
- When **should** I drink it?

- No, you **shouldn't**.
- Every evening before bed.
- Yes, you **should**.

 Listen and check. Then repeat.


GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 150

- 3 Read the problems 1–8 and choose the correct advice for each one a–h. Then complete the advice with **should/shouldn't**. There may be more than one possible answer.

- My hand hurts a bit today.
- I've got a pain in my foot.
- I've got a headache and a temperature.
- I feel a bit sick.
- My eyes hurt.
- I can't move my leg at all. I think it's broken.
- I feel very tired.
- I've got a bad cold.

- You _____ go to bed earlier.
- You _____ take some medicine and go to bed.
- You _____ play tennis.
- You _____ go to school.
- You _____ wear more comfortable shoes.
- You _____ go to hospital.
- You _____ eat anything.
- You _____ stop watching TV.

- 4 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

-  I think you should to bring a scarf.
- You shoud go to the doctor.
- I should to go to bed earlier.
- You aren't well. You stay at home today.
- You don't come to my house today – I am ill.
- You no should watch TV all day.



PRONUNCIATION

Silent consonants

- 5 Some words in English have silent consonants. Find one silent consonant in each word.

castle	climb	half	knife
listen	should	talk	walk
would	wrong	wrote	



Listen and check. Then repeat.

- 6 Read the example conversation. Have similar conversations with your partner. Choose a different question from the box each time. Use health problems and advice from this lesson, or use your own ideas.

What's wrong?
What's the matter?
Are you OK?



What's the matter?

I've got a temperature.
What should I do?



You should rest. You should also drink lots of water. You shouldn't go to school.

READING

- 1 Read the magazine article. Match the photos A-D to the paragraphs 1-3.
- 2 Choose the correct headings a-d for the paragraphs 1-3. There is one heading you don't need.

a Different kinds of running races	c All the ways running is good for you
b Some problems with running	d Reasons why running is popular

What is so great about

running?

1 In the past, people didn't need sports like running to stay healthy because they were very active. But these days, many of us spend most of the day sitting down. This means we need to get some exercise in our free time, and running is a cheap and easy way to do it. It's more fun than doing boring exercises in a gym, and all you need is a good pair of trainers and some comfortable clothes. Also, it's a sport that people can do at any age – for example Fauja Singh finished a marathon at the age of 101!

2 To make running interesting, you can enter a race. Fun runs are very popular. These are often 5 km long and are great for beginners. You can run with your friends and maybe dress up. For fitter people, there are half-marathons, marathons, or even ultra-marathons. These can be 70–400 km long. One of the most famous is the Marathon des Sables which takes six days and goes through the Sahara desert.

3 Running is fun and scientists say it is one of the best ways to keep fit. However, make sure you don't do it every day – it's important to have a rest between runs. Running improves the health of almost every part of your body, including your brain. It can make you feel happier and healthier, and live longer. It also helps you sleep well, and that gives you the energy to enjoy your life more. Perhaps it's the perfect sport!



TALKING POINTS

Do you go running? If not, would you like to?

Do you think running is the 'perfect sport'? If not, what is?

VOCABULARY

Health

- 1 For each phrase in the box, two verbs are right and one is wrong. Cross out the wrong verb for each phrase.



get / keep / do	fit
enter / do / stay	a race
go / eat / sleep	well
have / take / do	a rest
make / feel / stay	healthy
do / keep / try	some exercises in a gym
get / do / keep	some exercise

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct tense of the verbs in Exercise 1.

- After I broke my leg, I _____ some exercises to make it strong again.
- I think it's really important to _____ fit, so I _____ a lot of exercise.
- In my family, we _____ well. We have lots of vegetables and no fast food.
- My dad _____ a 5 km race last week and finished in 35 minutes.
- When I do a lot of exercise and spend time outdoors I _____ fit and healthy.
- After the race, my brother _____ a long rest.

- 3 Write sentences about you and your family using the vocabulary in Exercise 1. In pairs, compare your sentences.

- 2 What advice did Holly give Jed? Complete Holly's notes with the phrases in the box.



Listen again and check.

buy special running clothes
watch TV and play computer games
get good trainers
go running every day
go to bed early every night
eat well and drink lots of water
go swimming or cycling
do leg exercises
get an app
have chocolate or cake

Holly's notes

Advice for Jed

He should

He shouldn't

1 _____

8 _____

2 _____

9 _____

3 _____

10 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

7 _____

- 3 Compare Holly's advice with the advice in the article. What do you think of Holly's advice to Jed? Which advice is good and which is bad?

LISTENING

- 1 Read the sentences below and listen to the conversations between a boy called Jed and a girl called Holly. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (X)?

- Jed wants to do a 5 km race.
- Holly can do the race with Jed.
- Jed wants to do the race with Holly.
- Jed is worried about the price of sports clothes and trainers.
- Jed is happy to get up early.
- Jed can go cycling as well as running.
- Jed is pleased to see Holly after the race.



SPEAKING

- 1 Look at the questions on an internet chat page. The people are all asking for advice.

My family and I are going on a cycling holiday soon, but I'm not very fit. Can you give me some advice?

I want to improve my English. It's really bad and I feel worried! What should I do?

In pairs, think of three pieces of advice for each person.

This person should/shouldn't ...
Another idea is to ... It's important to ...

- 2 Compare your ideas with another pair's ideas. Who gave the best advice?

14

GETTING AROUND TOWN

VOCABULARY

AND

READING

Places in town

1 Look at the map and find these things.

EP

bridges bus stops a playground
a roundabout streets traffic lights

2 Look at the map again and find a place where you can:

EP

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 0 see a film <i>cinema</i> | 8 buy petrol |
| 1 send a letter | 9 find a police officer |
| 2 stay the night | 10 get better |
| 3 buy food | 11 see a play |
| 4 borrow a book | 12 catch a bus |
| 5 study | 13 learn about history |
| 6 eat a meal | 14 buy things outdoors |
| 7 get some money | |

3 Talk to your partner. Which of the places in Exercise 2 do you ...

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| • like going to? | • often go to? |
| • hate going to? | • never go to? |

4 Read the description of the town and look at the map in Exercise 1. Find five mistakes in the description.



ABOUT YOU

Do you live in a city, town or village? What is it like?
Do you prefer cities, towns or villages?
What's the best thing about where you live?

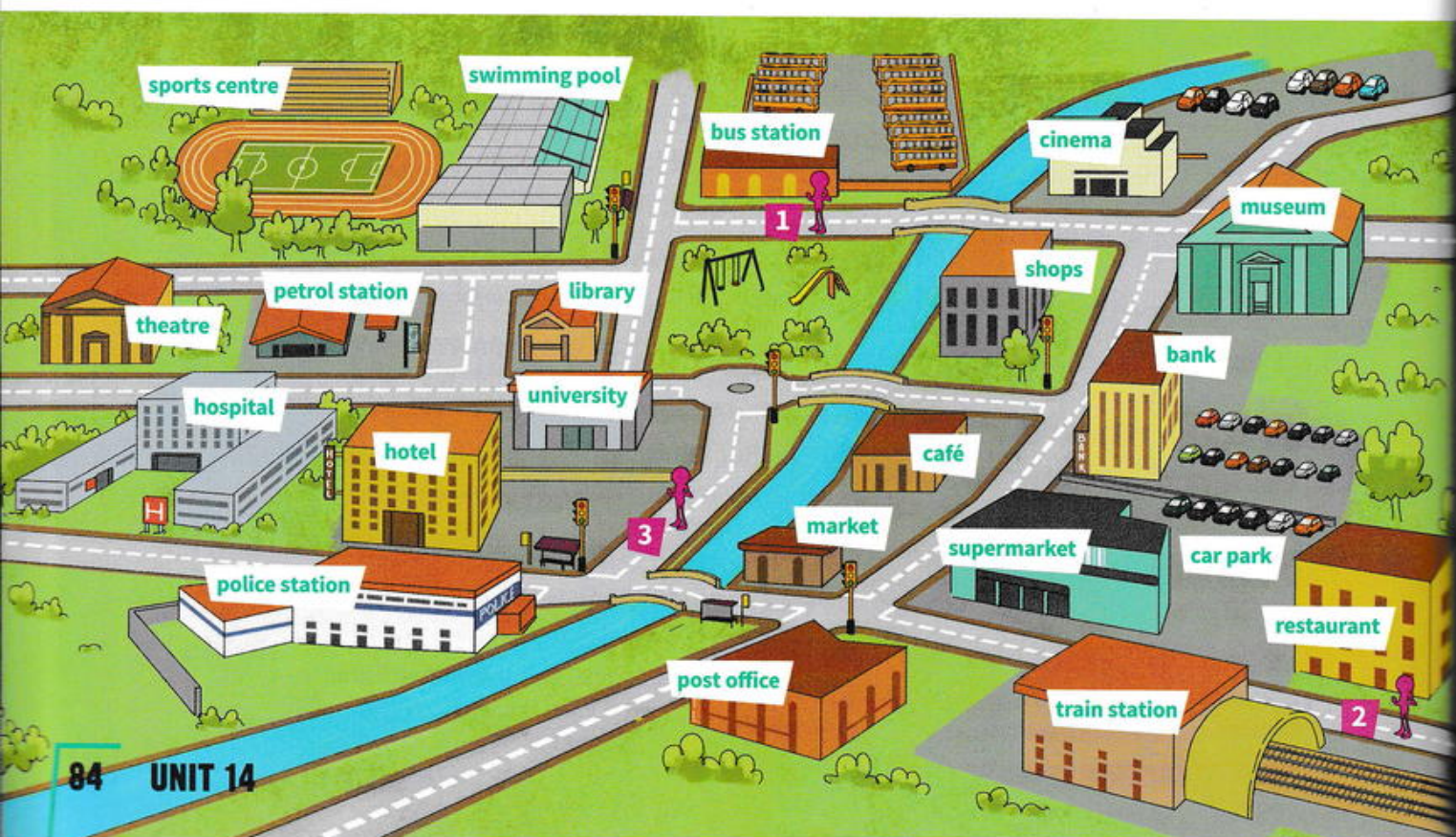
ABOUT | GALLERY | CONTACT

This is my town. It's small but very pretty. A river goes **through** the town centre and there are four bridges going **across** it. Between the road and the river, there's a market. **Next to** the market is a really nice café. There are also some shops in the town. **Opposite** the shops, there's a bank, a museum and a restaurant. Behind the museum, there's a children's playground. The restaurant is **near** the train station, and **beside** the train station there's a post office. There's also a sports centre on that street. **In front of** the supermarket, there's a car park. We have a zoo too, but that's **outside** the town.



101

5 20 9

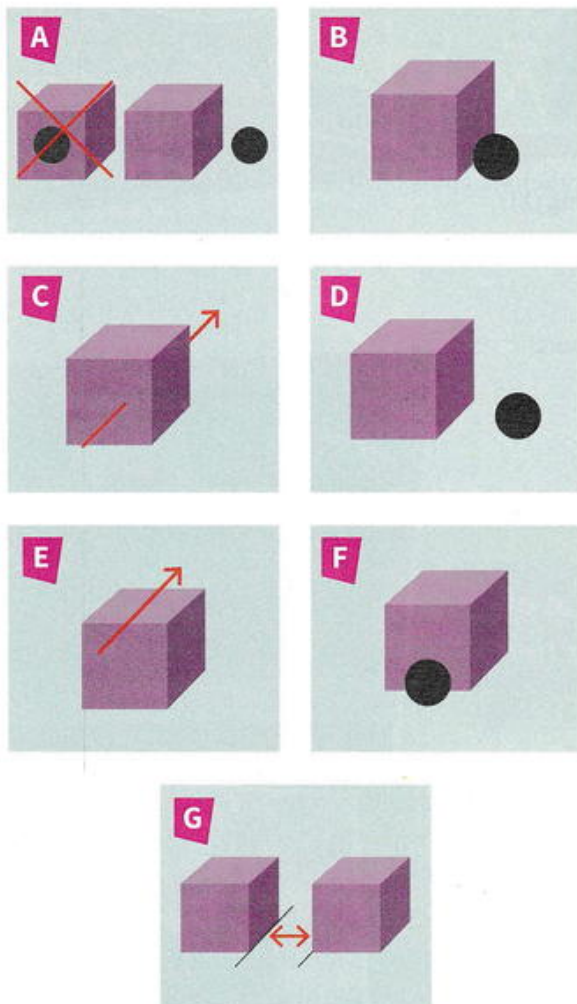


GRAMMAR

Prepositions

- 1 Read the description in Exercise 4 on page 84 again and match the prepositions to the diagrams.

across beside/next to in front of
near opposite outside through



- 2 Look at the map on page 84. Complete each sentence with a preposition.

- The river goes _____ the town.
- Hotel guests need to go _____ the river to go to the museum.
- The zoo is _____ the town.
- There's a bus stop _____ the hospital.
- There's a car park _____ the supermarket.
- The bank is _____ the museum.
- There are some shops _____ the museum.

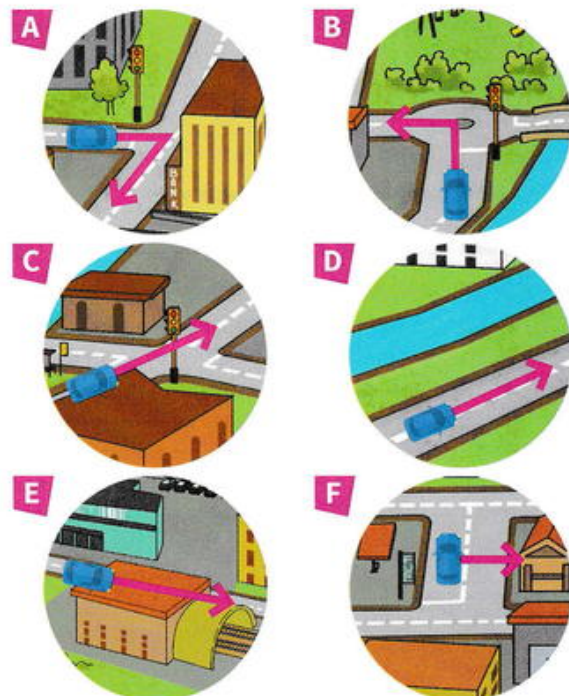
GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 151

- 3 Find the people on the map on page 84. Each person wants to go somewhere. Listen to the conversations. Where do the people want to go?

Person 1 _____ Person 3 _____
Person 2 _____

- 4 Match the sentences to the pictures.

- Go past the train station.
- Turn right at the traffic lights.
- Go straight on. Don't turn left or right at the traffic lights.
- The bank is on your right.
- Drive along the road beside the river.
- Turn left at the roundabout.



Listen and check. Then repeat.

- 5 Choose the correct preposition to complete the sentences.

- To get to my house, go *through* / *along* Beat Street, turn right and it's on your left.
- My house is *between* / *next to* the Columbus Hotel.
- To get to the station, walk *across* / *near* the bridge at the end of the High Street.
- The bus stops *before* / *outside* my house. It brings me all the way home.
- My house is *in front of* / *opposite* the post office. I can cross the road and send letters and parcels there.

- 6 Work with a partner. Student A, say which person you are on the map (1, 2 or 3). Then ask Student B for directions to somewhere on the map. Student B, give directions. Then change roles.

A: *Excuse me. Is there a supermarket near here?*

- 7 Write some directions to places from your school. Give the directions to your teacher to read out.

- 8 In pairs, listen to new directions from your partner. Say where they take you to.

Go out of the school and turn left. Take the first road on the right. Walk past Café Brava. Where are you?

READING

- 1 Look at the map and read the article about Edinburgh. Match places A-E to the names in the box.

Edinburgh Castle
Palace of Holyroodhouse
Scottish Parliament
St Giles' Cathedral
Tourist Information Office



Listen and check. Then repeat.

- 2 Read the article again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (X)?

- 1 Edinburgh is the largest city in Scotland.
- 2 Lots of people visit the castle in the summer.
- 3 You can walk from Edinburgh Castle to Holyroodhouse.
- 4 The Camera Obscura museum is about the history of Edinburgh.
- 5 The Queen sometimes stays at Holyroodhouse.
- 6 The Scottish Parliament building is closed to visitors.
- 7 Princes Street is a good place to go shopping.
- 8 All of Edinburgh's guided tours are on foot.

Hey guys! I'm going to **Edinburgh**, the capital of Scotland, soon. Have you got any advice for me?

Lucky you! Edinburgh's great. It isn't the biggest city in Scotland, but it's very beautiful and has an amazing history. The best place to start is Edinburgh Castle. This sits up on top of Castle Rock and from here you can see the whole city below you. It gets very busy in the summer.

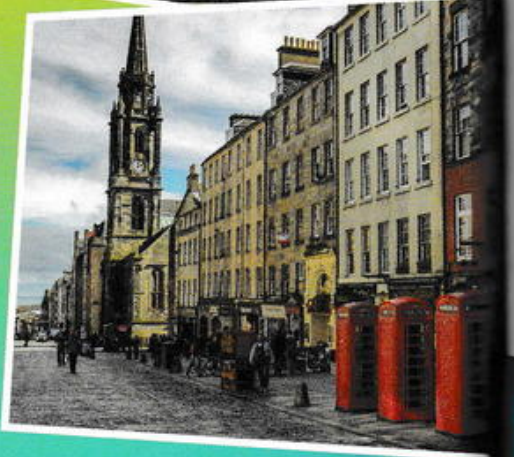
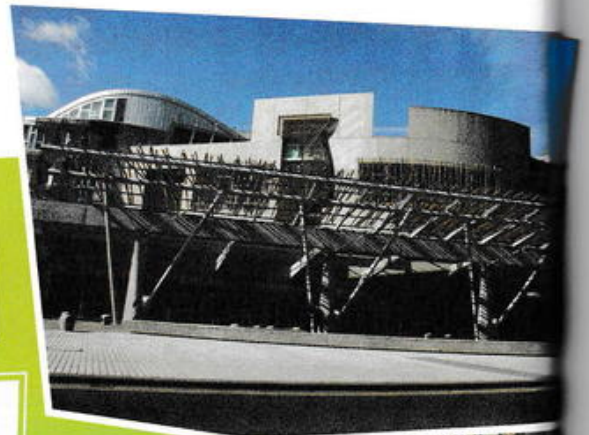
Next, walk down the Royal Mile, through Edinburgh's 12th-century Old Town. Don't miss St Giles' Cathedral and the Camera Obscura. This amazing museum is all about how we see things, and has floating fish, funny mirrors and a 3D tunnel of stars. They sell great postcards there.

At the bottom of the Royal Mile is the Queen's Edinburgh home, the Palace of Holyroodhouse. When the Queen isn't there, you can visit the rooms and gardens. Next to the Palace is the Scottish Parliament. Spanish architect Enric Miralles designed it. Parts of it look like fishing boats on the beach. There are also roof gardens and fountains. And you can visit it for free!

You should also go to Edinburgh's New Town. This area isn't very new actually – it's over 200 years old! The most famous street in Edinburgh, called Princes Street, is in New Town. Here you find Edinburgh's best shops and department stores.

If you haven't got much time, you can see Edinburgh with a tour guide. Choose from walking tours, cycle tours and even ghost tours. These take you through the narrow streets of the Old Town late at night, and include scary stories from the 18th century.

Don't forget to take a good guidebook – and your raincoat. It often rains in Edinburgh. Have a great time!



TALKING POINTS

Would you like to go to Edinburgh? Why / Why not?
What would you like to do there?
Do you enjoy visiting cities?
What kind of museums do you like best?

VOCABULARY

Compound nouns

In English, it's possible to make new words by putting two words together: *bus + stop = bus stop*. These are called compound nouns. Sometimes they are written as one word and sometimes as two. Do you do this in your language too?

- Look at the map, text and Exercises on page 84, and find 12 compound nouns.
- Match the words on the left of the box to the words on the right to make compound nouns. Remember some are one word and some are two.

post	guide
cycle	tour
walking	coat
guide	card
tour	book
rain	tour

Listen and check. Then repeat.

- Complete the sentences with compound nouns from Exercise 2.
- I found a _____ with a really nice picture on it to send to my friend.
- I'm glad I wore a _____ yesterday because the weather was terrible.
- Our _____ was so funny. I loved her stories about the city.
- That _____ was fun, but my feet hurt now!
- I read in the _____ that this castle is 1,000 years old.
- The _____ was brilliant. We rode all around the city.

PRONUNCIATION

Compound nouns

- Listen to the compound nouns and underline the stressed words.

cycle tour

In compound nouns, which word do we usually stress? Listen again and repeat the words.

LISTENING

- Listen to Rob talking to a friend about a visit to Edinburgh. Which place did Rob visit at each time?

0 Friday evening B

Times		Places
1 Saturday morning	<input type="checkbox"/>	A Scottish Parliament
2 Saturday afternoon	<input type="checkbox"/>	B Old Town
3 Saturday evening	<input type="checkbox"/>	C Theatre
4 Sunday morning	<input type="checkbox"/>	D New Town
5 Sunday afternoon	<input type="checkbox"/>	E Museum
		F Edinburgh Castle
		G Cathedral
		H Holyroodhouse

- In pairs, compare your answers. Listen again and check.

WRITING

PREPARE TO WRITE

An article

GET READY Look at the article about Edinburgh again and find all the examples of *this* and *these*. Then complete the paragraph about London with *this* or *these*.

London is the capital city of England, and has lots of interesting buildings you can visit. One of ¹ _____ is Buckingham Palace, the Queen's London home. From here you can walk to St James's Park. ² _____ is a lovely place to stop for a rest and a picnic. Many people like to see shows when they are in London. You can get tickets for ³ _____ online or in Leicester Square. And don't forget about Harrods! ⁴ _____ shop is famous around the world.

PLAN Make a list of interesting and famous places in a city you know well. Choose three, and make notes about them. You could include information such as:

- where they are
- what you can do there
- why they are interesting.

WRITE Write 50–60 words about your city. Use *this/ these* in your paragraph.

IMPROVE In pairs, read your own text and your partner's. Did you write about the same places? Check for mistakes with *this/these*. Give your partner two ideas to make their text better.

CULTURE

FACTFILE

Scotland

SCOTLAND

1 Read the sentences and look at the map. Match the sentences to the places.

- 1 This city is in the west of Scotland. It is the largest city in Scotland.
- 2 This city is in the north of Scotland. It is the capital of the Scottish Highlands.
- 3 This city is near the coast in the east of Scotland. It is the capital of the country.

2 Read and match the photos (A-E) to the texts (1-5).

Scotland is part of the United Kingdom.
Population: Around 5.4 million people
Languages: English, Gaelic and Scots
Capital city: Edinburgh



SCOTTISH HIGHLIGHTS

Are you are looking for a great place to spend your next holiday?
Then come to Scotland! Find out more about this interesting country
and things you can do, see ... and eat!

- 1 _____ The **Great Highland Bagpipe** is a Scottish musical instrument. It is a **woodwind** instrument. To play the instrument, the bagpiper fills the bag with air and pushes it out with his elbow.
- 2 _____ The **Highland Games** happen around Scotland from June to September. People celebrate Highland Games in other parts of the world too. There are different sporting competitions at the games. These test throwing, pulling and strength. The games are **competitive** but people can also enjoy music and dancing.
- 3 _____ For special **events**, like parties, Scottish men often wear a **kilt**. Kilts are skirts. They are usually made of coloured or black wool with a 'tartan' **pattern**. Members of the same family ('clan') have their own, specific tartan. Men often wear shoes called **Brogues** with their traditional clothes.
- 4 _____ In Scotland, there is a famous biscuit called **shortbread**. One of the most important things in shortbread is butter. Butter is also an ingredient in a popular Scottish sweet called **fudge**.
- 5 _____ The **School of Art** and the **Queen's Cross Church** in Glasgow are both buildings by the famous Scottish **architect** Charles Rennie Mackintosh. There are also a lot of beautiful, historical **castles** in Scotland to visit.



3 Match the headings to the texts.

Buildings Clothes Food Music Sports

4 Read the texts again and answer the questions.

- 1 What does a bagpipe player fill the bag with?
- 2 When are the Highland Games in Scotland?
- 3 When do men wear kilts in Scotland?
- 4 What ingredient is in shortbread and fudge?
- 5 Where is Queen's Cross Church?
- 6 Which buildings are by Charles Rennie Mackintosh?

5 Match the **highlighted** words in the article to the meanings.

- 1 repeated lines or colours
- 2 this person draws buildings
- 3 a social activity with lots of people
- 4 a type of instrument, like the bagpipes, flute or clarinet
- 5 trying to win something or get points for something



TALKING POINTS

Would you like to visit Scotland? Why? / Why not?



6 Listen to Emma talking to her friend about the summer holidays. What does she decide to do with her family?

- a visit a castle b watch the Highland Games



7 Listen to the conversation again. Are the sentences are right (✓) or wrong (X)?

- 1 Emma and her family have plans to go to Scotland and Ireland.
- 2 Emma needs to choose two activities.
- 3 Emma really likes geography.
- 4 You can see 14 castles on the tour.
- 5 The castle tour leaves the hotel before eight in the morning.
- 6 They can watch and listen to music and dance in the afternoon at the Highland Games.
- 7 Emma needs to bring her friend fudge.



8 Listen again and complete the table.

	Things to do or see
Castle Tour	
Highland Games	

9 Which of the two tours would you like to do? Why?

PROJECT

A brochure

Imagine you work for a tour company. In pairs, design a brochure to attract visitors to your area.

- Make notes about:
 - local events visitors can go to
 - typical food visitors can try
 - important buildings to visit
 - music they can listen to
- Find or take some **photographs** of your local area, make a brochure.
- Present your brochure to another pair.

15

MYSTERIES IN NATURE



ABOUT YOU

What are your favourite places or things in nature?
What activities do you like doing outside?
Where do you like doing them?

VOCABULARY

AND

READING

Geographical features

- 1 Match photos A-H to the words in the box. Use each word once only.

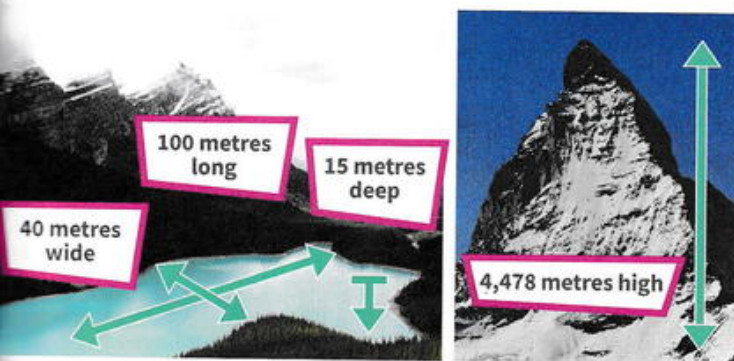
EP

cliff river island lake mountain
river snow water



Listen and check. Then repeat.

- 2 Look at the photos and complete the sentences with *wide, high, long* and *deep*.



- Mount Everest is 8,848 metres _____.
- The Amazon River is 11 kilometres _____ and 6,400 kilometres _____.
- Lake Titicaca is 107 metres _____.

- 3 Match the words in Exercise 1 to the adjectives in the box.

EP

deep high long wide

- 4 Think about your country. Give the names of ...

- two high mountains
- an area of deep water
- a long river
- a wide lake.



- What can you see in the photos on page 91? What do you think this strange story is about?
- Read the article quickly. Check your answers to Exercise 5.
- Read the article again. Complete the text with *wide, high, long* and *deep*.
- In pairs, discuss these questions.
 - Do you think the Yeti is real, or is it just a story?
 - What do you think the footprint in the snow belongs to?

Is the story real?



112

In 1951, a British explorer, Eric Shipton, was climbing in the Himalayas, south of Mount Everest. He wasn't exploring alone. There were several climbers and Sherpas with him. They weren't climbing that day, but they were walking through thick snow on a mountain 6,000 metres ¹ _____ when they saw a line of footprints. They followed the footprints for 500 metres. The footprints were 33 cm ² _____, 20 cm ³ _____ and a few centimetres ⁴ _____. It wasn't a bear. The footprints were much too big. The Sherpas said the animal usually lived in the forests and didn't often come up into the snow. Their name for the animal was the Yeti, or the Wild Man of the Snows. People still come back from the Himalayas today with stories of seeing the Yeti.

GRAMMAR

Past continuous

1 Read the table. Complete sentences 1–4 using the verbs in the article.

Positive	Eric Shipton The climbers	was were	¹ _____ in the mountains. ² _____ through thick snow.
Negative	Eric Shipton The climbers	wasn't weren't	³ _____ alone. ⁴ _____ that day.
Questions	Was Were	I/he/she/it you/we/they	_____ looking for footprints?
Short answers	Yes, No,	I/he/she/it you/we/they	was. wasn't. were. weren't.



GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 152

2 What was happening yesterday afternoon? Complete the sentences with the past continuous form of the verbs.

- 'Was' Suzie helping (help) her teacher?
'Yes, she was.'
- The boys _____ (play) football in the park.
They _____ (not run) very fast because the grass was too long.
- _____ you _____ (climb) that tree?
'No, I _____.'
- My friend _____ (watch) TV. She _____ (not tidy) her room.
- '_____ the students _____ (working) on the computer?' 'Yes, _____.'

3 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- We are playing football in the park yesterday morning.
- I lost it at the party when we are dancing.
- We aren't reading stories about strange animals in class yesterday.
- She isn't thinking and she dropped her bag.



PRONUNCIATION

Rising and falling intonation

113

4 Listen and repeat.

My brother was riding his bike.
My dad wasn't working in the garden.
Were they climbing in the mountains?
Were you looking for footprints?

5 In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

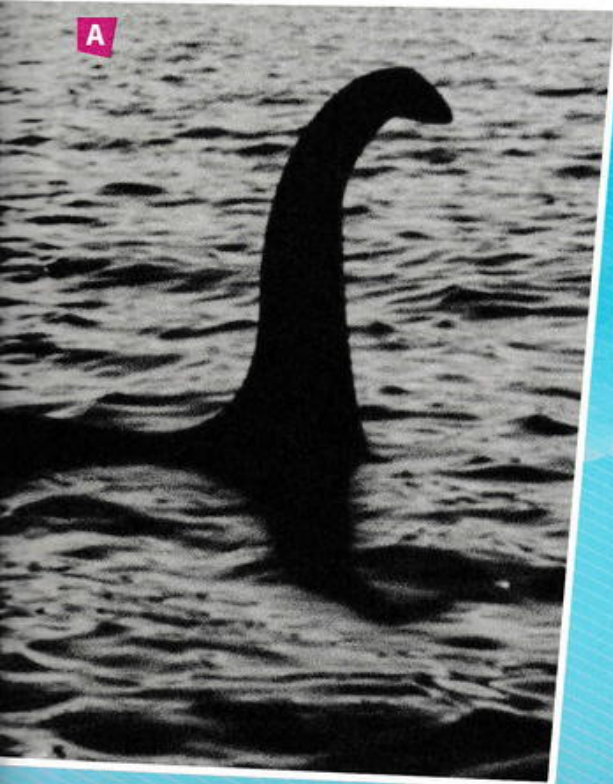
What were you doing ...
... last Sunday morning at eleven o'clock?
... yesterday at seven o'clock in the morning?
... last Saturday at one o'clock?
... last Monday evening at six o'clock?

What were you doing last Sunday morning at eleven o'clock?

I was at the sports centre.
I was swimming with my mum.

READING

- 1 Look at the photos. What do you know about Loch Ness and the Loch Ness Monster?
- 2 Read the article quickly and match the pictures A-C to the paragraphs 1-3.



LOCH NESS

- 3 Read the article again and answer the questions.

- 1 When do people think they see things on the loch?
- 2 What does 'loch' mean?
- 3 How big is Loch Ness?
- 4 Which has more water: the lakes of Wales and England or Loch Ness?
- 5 When did people first see a monster?

1

Loch is the Scottish Gaelic word for 'lake'. Loch Ness is in the north of Scotland not far from Inverness. The loch is 230 m deep – it's the second deepest loch in Scotland – 36 km long and nearly 3 km wide. There's more water in Loch Ness than all the water in all the lakes in England and Wales. That's a lot of water for something to hide in!

2

The weather around the loch changes quickly. One minute it's sunny, the next it's cloudy, the next there's a bit of rain, and then it's sunny again. It can be a windy place, too. Clouds move quickly through the sky and on sunny days the clouds make shadows on the water. It's easy to think you see something in the water. When it's foggy, the fog sits on the loch and it's possible to think you see things then too.

3

The story of the Loch Ness Monster, or 'Nessie', started about 1,500 years ago. Then people called it a giant water animal. In the 1930s, a new road beside the loch brought more people to the area and more people started to see more strange things. In fact, over 1,000 people think they saw a strange animal in the loch.

There are several photos of some of the strange animals. Could any of them be Nessie?



TALKING POINTS

Do you think there is a monster living in Loch Ness?
If not, why do so many people think they see something?

VOCABULARY

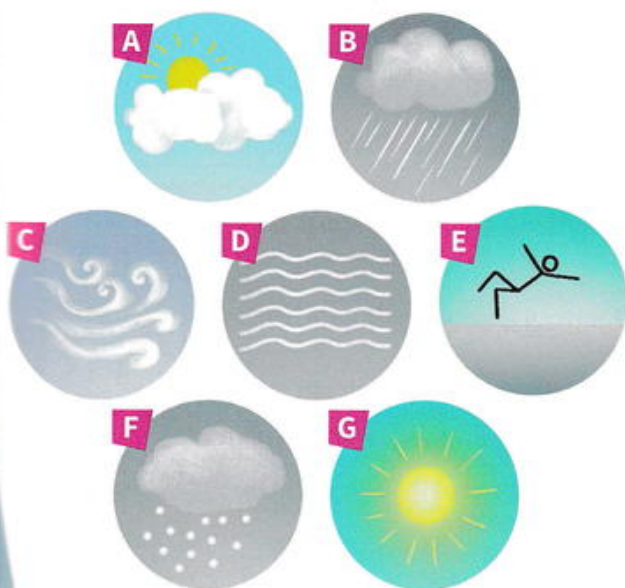
The weather

1 Complete the table with the adjectives.

EP

Nouns	Adjectives
cloud	<i>cloudy</i>
fog	
ice	
rain	
snow	
sun	
wind	

2 Now match the adjectives to the symbols.



3 Complete the facts using the words in Exercise 1.

- Wellington in New Zealand is a very _____ city. The _____ blows at more than 50 km an hour for more than half the year.
- New York can be very _____ in winter. In some years, the _____ is more than 50 cm deep.
- Valletta, the capital of Malta, has more _____ days than other cities in Europe. On most days there are no clouds in the sky.
- Mawsynram in India is the wettest place in the world. There is _____ most days of the year and people always carry an umbrella.

4 How would you describe your town or city? Use the word from Exercise 1.

In winter, Moscow is a very snowy city. There is deep snow everywhere from November to March.

LISTENING



- 1 Peter was on holiday with a friend in Scotland last summer. They were looking for the Loch Ness monster. Listen and answer the question.

What was the weather like?



- 2 Listen again and answer the questions.

- What day of the week was it?
- What did Peter do after he woke up?
- What could Peter see on the other side of the loch?
- What did Peter think he could see in the water?
- Why did Peter wait before he took the photo?
- What did his friend see in the water?

SPEAKING

- 1 What other stories about strange animals do you know? Do you know the names of any mythological animals?

Use the questions to help you with your ideas.

Where does the animal live?
In which country?
In the forest / water / mountains?
What does it look like?
Is it big / small?
Does it fly?
Is it friendly / shy?
What is it called?
Are there any pictures or photos of it?
Is it real or just a story?

In pairs, tell your partner about your strange animal.

16 AMAZING ANIMALS

ABOUT YOU

11 Watch the video then ask and answer the questions in pairs.

What animals do people in your family have?

Do you like visiting zoos? Why? / Why not?

Is there any animal in particular that you like?



VOCABULARY

AND

READING

Animals

1 Match the photos A-J to the words in the box.

EP

bear chicken duck elephant
insect lion monkey mouse
rabbit rat

116

Listen, check and repeat.

2 Complete the table with the words in Exercise 1. Which of the animals can you keep as pets?

Wild animals	Farm animals	Both

Now add other animals that you know.

3 In pairs, discuss the questions.

- Which of the animals in Exercise 2 can help people?
- How do they help?
- What can they do?

4 Look at the photos on page 95. Are these wild animals, pets or farm animals?


Now read the story quickly. Which animal helped Jack?

5 Choose the best title for the story.

- A quiet walk in the forest
- Bear to the rescue
- Alone with a mountain lion

6 Read the story again and answer the questions.

- What time of year was it?
- Was Jack walking in this area for the first time?
- How many bears did he see?
- Was the bear afraid of Jack?
- What jumped onto Jack's back?
- Which was the larger animal, the mother bear or the mountain lion?
- What did the bear do next?
- What did the mountain lion do next?



One day in May, Jack Smith was walking in Northern Oregon. It was a place he liked walking in and he knew it well. He was walking along a path when he saw a black bear, a female with her two babies. One was about a year old, the other was only a few months. Jack stopped to watch the bears. Because Jack walked along the path regularly, the bear knew who he was. It wasn't afraid and it didn't try to attack him. While Jack was watching the bears, something large and heavy hit him from behind. It was a mountain lion! Jack tried to get away from the mountain

lion. Then, while he was fighting it, the mother bear ran towards him. But the bear didn't attack Jack, it attacked the mountain lion. The bear was much bigger than the mountain lion. While the mountain lion was attacking Jack, the bear stood on its two back legs and pulled the mountain lion off Jack's back. The mountain lion ran off into the trees. Then the bear went back onto its four feet and looked at Jack for a moment, before it walked back to look after its babies.

Jack wasn't badly hurt. He was sure the bear recognised him and wanted to save his life.



GRAMMAR

Past simple and past continuous

- 1 Look at this sentence from the story and answer the questions.

A

B

He **was walking** along a path when he **saw** a black bear.

- Which verb is past simple, and which verb is past continuous?
- Which action, A or B, started first?
- Which action, A or B, interrupted the other?

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 153

- Find three sentences with *while* in the story. Answer questions 2 and 3 in Exercise 1 about them.
- Find all the other examples of the past simple and the past continuous in the story.
- Complete the sentences with one verb in the past simple and one in the past continuous.
 - The boy was eating (eat) an ice cream when the monkey stole (steal) it.
 - The cats _____ (sleep) outside when the rain _____ (start).
 - While the girl _____ (read) a book, her phone _____ (ring).
 - The teacher _____ (arrive) while Katie and Adam _____ (play) a computer game.
 - Lucy _____ (eat) her lunch when she _____ (hear) the news.
 - The boy _____ (fall off) his board while he _____ (skate) in the park.

- 5 Correct the mistakes with the past simple and past continuous.

- When we looking for the lions at the zoo yesterday, we found the elephants.
- Yesterday while I came back home, I dropped my purse in the road.
- When I waiting for the bus, I saw a monkey in the trees.
- When we walk beside the lake, we heard a noise behind us.
- It is snowing when I went there and very cold.

- 6 In pairs, take turns to say sentences with *when* or *while* and the past simple or past continuous. Use the verbs in the box and animals from the table on page 94.

climb	drive	eat	find	open
run	sit	talk	walk	write

While the man was driving along the road, a monkey jumped out of a tree.

I saw a family of rabbits when I was walking by the river.

READING

- 1 Look at the photos. How are these animals helping people? Do you think it is bad to use animals in this way? Discuss your ideas with your partner.
- 2 Read Part 1 of the article. Match two of the photos A-C to this part of the article.
- 3 Read Part 1 of the article again.
 - 1 Find three things that guide horses can do.
 - 2 Find two things that monkey helpers can do.

- 4 Look at the photos again. What do you think Part 2 of the article is about? Read it quickly to check your ideas.
- 5 Read Part 2 of the article again. For each question, choose the correct answer (A, B or C) for each gap.

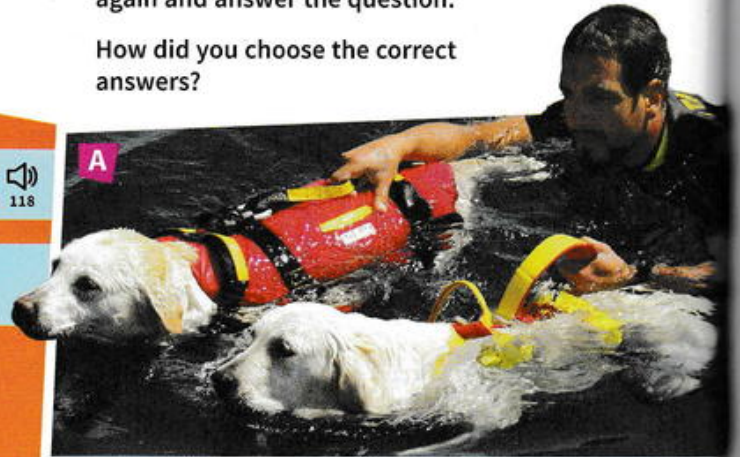
1 A busy	B free	C favourite
2 A help	B look	C make
3 A tells	B speaks	C says
4 A arrives	B brings	C collects
5 A shall	B need	C should
6 A project	B activities	C jobs
- 6 In pairs, look at all the choices for Exercise 5 again and answer the question.

How did you choose the correct answers?

Our Animal Friends



Animals can help people in many different ways. They can help people in their homes and in their daily lives. They can also save people when they are in danger, for example in the mountains or in the sea. When people think of animal helpers, most people think of guide dogs for the blind (people who can't see). But do you know about guide horses? These small horses help blind people move around a city or town. For example, they travel with them in taxis, cross roads and even help them get on and get off buses. Horses live much longer than dogs, so they can be with the person for a long time. Other animals can be helpers too. Monkeys are very clever and can look after people in many different ways. They can pick up your phone when you drop it. They can turn on the television for your favourite programme and turn off the television when it finishes. However, many people think that monkeys shouldn't be animal helpers because they are wild animals.



2 Most dogs are good at swimming but the dogs in the photo are very, very good at it. They work on ¹ _____ beaches in Italy during the summer, keeping people safe in the sea. They can jump from helicopters and fast boats, and ² _____ people in danger in the water.

'Dogs don't get tired as quickly as we do,' ³ _____ Emilio, their trainer. 'A dog is strong and it can swim fast. It gets to a swimmer faster than we can and then it ⁴ _____ the person back to the beach.'

It takes three years to teach these dogs everything they ⁵ _____ to know. Then they are ready to do their ⁶ _____.

People often think of animals as their friends, but these amazing animals are much more than that.



TALKING POINTS

Were you surprised by any of the animal helpers in the article? Which ones? Why?
Discuss your ideas with your partner.

VOCABULARY

Phrasal verbs

1 Match the phrasal verbs from Part 1 of the article to the meanings.

EP

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| 1 get on | a start something working |
| 2 get off | b stop something working |
| 3 look after | c take something off the floor |
| 4 pick up | d enter a bus, train, plane or boat |
| 5 turn off | e leave a bus, train, plane or boat |
| 6 turn on | f help someone when they are ill or cannot do something themselves |

2 Complete each sentence with one of the phrasal verbs in Exercise 1 in the correct tense.

- It was starting to rain when I got off the bus, so I opened my umbrella.
- Please pick up your bags from the floor and put them on the shelf.
- Finally, the boat arrived to take us across the lake. But it was full and we couldn't get on.
- I can only do my homework when it's quiet. Please can you turn off the radio?
- I looked after my mum when she was ill. I made her meals and drinks.
- I woke up suddenly in the night and it was very dark, so I turned on the light.



PRONUNCIATION

/u:/ and /ʊ/

119

3 Listen to the sounds /u:/ and /ʊ/.

Then put the words in the box in the correct columns.

do food foot good
group look move put
suit took true two

/u:/ move

/ʊ/ look

120

Listen and check. Then repeat.

LISTENING



121

1 Listen to the radio interview between Jim Townes and Sue Green. Sue talks about things children learn from looking after pets. How many things does she talk about?

121

2 Now listen again and make notes in the chart about what Sue says children learn from pets.

Food	Keeping them clean	Animals, not toys

3 Do you think Sue is right? What other things can children learn when they look after a pet?

WRITING



PREPARE TO WRITE

A story

GET READY Look at the three pictures. What does each one show? Compare your ideas with a partner.

PLAN In your story you have to write about all of the pictures. Read the questions and make notes.

- What happened in the first picture?
- What happened in the second picture?
- What happened in the third picture?
- What was the end of the story?



WRITE Write the story shown in the pictures. Write 35 words or more.

IMPROVE In pairs, read your own story and your partner's. Check for mistakes. Give your partner two ideas to make their story better. Use your partner's advice and rewrite your story.



PROTECTING ANIMALS



LIFE SKILLS

Protecting animals

We can protect pets and animals in the wild by:

- making sure they have food and water
- making sure they have a safe place to live
- being kind to them

1 Read the sentences in the speech bubbles and answer the questions.

Animals are not toys.

We should be kind to animals like we are kind to people.

- 1 Do you agree with the sentences? Why? / Why not?
- 2 Which sentence do you prefer? Why?
- 3 Do you have a pet? Have you ever visited an animal reserve or seen a wild animal?

2 Think of the animals in your country and answer the questions.

- 1 Which are in danger? What problems do they have?
- 2 Can people help them? How?

In pairs, compare your ideas.

3 Look at the title of the article and the photos. How do bees help us? Why is it important to protect bees? What is the bee collecting in the photo?

4 Read the article quickly and check your answers.



save the bees!

1

Are bees important?

Bees are a very important part of our **ecosystem**. Bees **pollinate** plants. In fact, about 30% of the food we eat depends on bees. Bees help people in other ways too. For example, they make the honey we eat and **wax** for candles and cleaning wood.

In many areas of the world, bees are in danger. People build houses, offices and factories on their homes. Farmers use strong chemicals on plants to stop insects eating them. But these chemicals also kill bees.



2

How does Mikaila Ulmer help bees?

Mikaila Ulmer, from Texas, is a girl who has her own lemonade company. She gives part of the money she makes selling lemonade and other products to **charities** to save bees. She teaches people about the importance of bees and how they help us. Mikaila has her own blog called Beelieve Blog. On her blog she shares information about her company and her projects.



3

How can we help bees and other insects?

There are a lot of different ways we can help **protect** bees and other insects. For example, we can:

- use fewer chemicals on plants
- learn more about organisations and people working to protect insects and their homes
- learn more about insects and how they help us
- start a blog on an animal or insect you think needs our help.



5 Read the text again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (X)?

- 1 Bees are not important animals.
- 2 Bees help us to make candles.
- 3 Bees are in danger in some places.
- 4 Michaela's company only sells honey.
- 5 Michaela has a blog.
- 6 We cannot help protect bees and other insects.

6 Match the **highlighted** words in the text to the meanings.

- 1 we use this to make candles
- 2 moving pollen from one plant to another
- 3 organisations helping something or someone and raising money
- 4 all the plants and animals in one place and how they live together
- 5 to keep safe



TALKING POINTS

Do you like bees or are you afraid of them?
What other animals are in danger?



7 Listen to Jayden and Alice talking. What are they talking about?

- a They are talking about making honey.
- b They are talking about birds and turtles in the wild.
- c They are talking about rescue centres and volunteer jobs.



8 Listen again and write Alice or Jayden.

- 1 _____ is looking at a website.
- 2 _____ is afraid of bees.
- 3 _____ says we get honey and wax from bees.
- 4 _____ finds a centre with rabbits, cats, dogs and rats.
- 5 _____ has music lessons on Saturday mornings.
- 6 _____ is going to call to find out more.

9 Look at the list (a-f). Number the top three ways you think we can help animals. Compare your answers with your partner.

- a We can donate money.
- b We can protect animals.
- c We can volunteer our time.
- d We can make sure that animals have food and water.
- e We can protect their homes.
- f We can find out ways to help animals.

10 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

donate make sure protect volunteer

- 1 I want to _____ at an animal rescue centre at weekends.
- 2 There are a lot of different ways to _____ animals. You can find out more online.
- 3 I want to _____ part of my pocket money to an animal rescue centre.
- 4 We need to _____ animals have safe homes, food and water.

PROJECT

A poster about protecting animals

In small groups, make a poster about protecting animals.

- Choose an animal. Is it a pet or a wild animal? How big is it?
- Design a small poster to help people know more about your animal. Include:
 - pictures of your animal or its home
 - what your animal needs
 - how people can help your animal
 - how we can protect it.
- Take turns presenting your posters to another group.
- Display posters in the classroom.

REVIEW 4 UNITS 13-16

VOCABULARY

1 Find the odd word out in each set.

- 0 lake cloudy mountain field
 1 duck monkey playground rabbit
 2 library insect bridge post office
 3 race headache temperature pain
 4 helicopter bicycle bus roundabout
 5 deep rest wide high

2 Read the definitions and complete the words.

- 0 When the weather is like this, it's difficult to see where you're going.
 f o q u y
 1 You put this on to keep you dry when it is wet.
 r u n u a n
 2 You stop your car and wait when this is red. You go when it is green.
 t ra f fe c ol i gh
 3 We get eggs and meat from this farm animal.
 c ow c ow
 4 This is an animal and also something we use with our computers.
 m ou s ou
 5 Doing lots of this keeps you healthy.
 e x er c is e

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrasal verbs in the box.

get on get off look after pick up
 turn off turn on

- 1 I was late for school this morning because I missed the wrong bus!
 2 The football match starts in a few minutes. Please can you switch on the TV?
 3 While I was on the train, I fell down and hurt my leg.
 4 My sister was ill yesterday, so my dad stayed at home to look after her.
 5 It's important to look after your mobile phone when you're at the cinema.
 6 At the weekends, I pick up rubbish at our local park.

GRAMMAR

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.



- 1 I ate with my family *out* / *outside* the tent.
 2 It's very easy to get to the sports centre because it's *in front of* / *opposite* my house.
 3 I took a trip *through* / *down* the River Nile.
 4 You *shall* / *should* bring some of your computer games.



Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 5 I enjoyed my holiday. Every day I was going swimming.
 6 I liked the tennis match because Nadal and Grigor Dimitrov are playing.
 7 In Thailand, I visited many places and the most interesting thing is eating the food there.
 8 It is raining in Taipei when we got there yesterday.

2 Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets. Use the past simple or past continuous.

- 0 It wasn't raining (not rain) when I left (leave) the house this morning.
 1 When I arrived (arrive) at the party, my friend was singing (sing) in the living room.
 2 I walked (walk) around the shops when I met (meet) my friend.
 3 My dad called (call) me while I was doing (do) my homework.
 4 I wasn't running (not run) when I hurt (hurt) my foot. I was dancing (dance).
 5 I wasn't seeing (not see) any animals when I was walking (walk) in the snow.

3 Give these people advice using *should* or *shouldn't*.

- 0 I've got a temperature and a headache.
You should take some medicine and go to bed.
You shouldn't go to school.
 1 My running shoes are too small.
 2 I really want a pet!
 3 The weather's really hot and I want to go to the beach.
 4 I've got nothing to wear to my friend's party.
 5 I don't know the way to the museum.

WRITING

- 1 Look at the three pictures. Write the story shown in the pictures.
Use 35 words or more.



LISTENING

- 1 For each question, choose the correct answer.
Listen to Tessa talking to her father about her friends. What problem does each person have?

Example:

0 Eva ☒ G

People		Problems
1 Leon	<input type="checkbox"/>	A foot hurts
2 Nat	<input type="checkbox"/>	B broken arm
3 Maddie	<input type="checkbox"/>	C feels sick
4 Ilsa	<input type="checkbox"/>	D has a cold
5 Greg	<input type="checkbox"/>	E headache
		F leg hurts
		G temperature
		H toothache

SPEAKING

- 1 Put the words in order to make questions.

- 1 feel / how / you / start / when / do / school / holidays / the ?
- 2 your / animal / favourite / what's / ?
- 3 weather / you / best / of / what / like / kind / do?
- 4 do / like / you / when / it's / doing / what / snowy / ?

In pairs, ask and answer the questions. Take turns to speak.

- 2 In pairs, talk about where you live. Take turns to speak.

Tell me about where you live.

I live in a small town. There's a park near the ...



ABOUT YOU

How often do you watch TV?
Do you watch more TV on your laptop, on your smartphone or on the television?



VOCABULARY

AND

LISTENING

Television

1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.



cartoons channels fan live
on demand on TV programme
records remote control stream
talent show the news

- It's so easy to watch TV these days. You can _____ anything at any time.
- I like to know what's happening in the world, so I watch _____ every day.
- TV with real people is OK, but it's more fun watching _____, like *Tom and Jerry*.
- Which _____ do you want to watch? There's one about nature or one about music.
- Please give me the _____. I want to turn on the television and I don't want to get up!
- Watch our new _____ tonight. There are six young singers and dancers. Choose the best.
- My brother's a big _____ of Manchester United. He watches all their matches.
- I think our television can get more than 100 _____. I never know what to watch.
- I like choosing what to watch and when I want to watch it, so I watch most of my television _____.
- Ed Sheeran is playing a concert tonight in London and they are showing it _____ on television, so I can watch it while he's playing.
- When my dad goes on holiday, he _____ his favourite shows and watches them when he gets back.
- Have you got a newspaper so we can see what's _____ this evening?



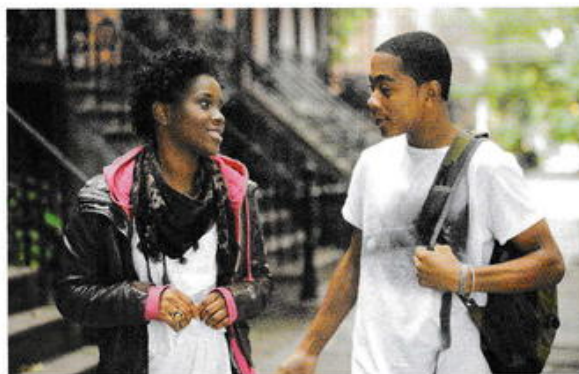
Listen and check, then repeat.

2 How do you watch television? In pairs, discuss the questions.

- Do you often watch shows live, or do you watch them on demand?
- Which programmes do you usually stream?
- Do you like talent shows? Which is your favourite?
- How many channels do you have at home?
- Which cartoons do you like watching?
- When do you watch live television?



3 Listen to the conversation. Ella and Charlie meet in the street. What does Charlie invite Ella to do?



4 Listen again and answer the questions.

- When is the football match on?
- Which channel does Ella think the game is on?
- Why does Ella want to watch the game on a television and not on her laptop?
- Where does Ella plan to watch the game?
- Why does Ella want to watch it live?
- What did Charlie's parents do last week?
- What does Charlie ask Ella to do?
- Where does Ella decide to watch the match in the end?

GRAMMAR

Future with *going to*

1 Look at the table and then complete the rule with one word.

I'm
He's
She's
It's
We're
You're
They're

I'm not
He isn't
She isn't
It isn't
We aren't
You aren't
They aren't

going to

watch the programme live.
be on TV.
watch the programme on demand.

We can use (not) *going to* + the _____ to talk about future plans.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 154



PRONUNCIATION

going to



2 Listen and repeat.

I'm going to watch it live at home on our big TV.
I'm going to watch it at Charlie's on his home cinema.

3 Read about Michael and Chloe. Choose activities for next weekend for Michael and Chloe from the list.



Chloe loves all kinds of sport. She likes being outside and going to the park with her friends. She doesn't like playing video games, and on TV she only likes watching cartoons. She sometimes goes to the cinema.



Michael loves reading and going to the cinema. He doesn't go out with his friends very much, but he loves playing computer games and watching anything on TV. He likes watching tennis, but he doesn't play, and he sometimes goes swimming.

Visit the new computer games shop.
Play tennis.
Go to the cinema.
Go swimming.
Watch a pop concert on TV.
Go for a walk.

4 In pairs, answer the questions.

- 1 What is **Michael** going to do? What isn't he going to do?
- 2 What is **Chloe** going to do? What isn't she going to do?
- 3 What are **Michael** and **Chloe** both going to do?

What is Michael going to do?

He's going to visit the new computer games shop.

5 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 1 I going to meet Grace at the park tomorrow.
- 2 We are going play tennis at the sports centre on Sunday.
- 3 For my party I going to invite five friends.
- 4 You can call me this evening because I not going to watch the match.
- 5 They not going shopping this week.

6 In small groups, ask and answer questions. Look at the times in the box and talk about your plans. Say some things you're going to do and some things you're not going to do.

next summer
this evening
next Saturday morning
tomorrow morning
next Sunday afternoon

What are you going to do next Sunday afternoon?

I'm going to visit my granny and granddad. I'm not going to do any homework!

READING

- 1 Do you watch TV talent shows? How many can you name?
- 2 Read the questions and talk about your ideas with your partner.
 - a Do talent shows tell people what to say or can they choose?
 - b What different kinds of talent show are there?
 - c What do winners of talent shows usually get?
 - d Who chooses the winners?
 - e Are talent shows live?



TALENT SHOWS

What do you really know about talent shows?

128

Everyone knows *The Voice*! It's a talent show for people who want to become famous singers. All of the singers on the show are good and some of them are excellent! There are lots of other talent shows around the world as well. In many countries, talent shows are the most popular shows on TV.

1 There are shows like *Got Talent* for musicians, people doing magic, singers ... and lots more. There's a show for dancers, too. It's called *Strictly Come Dancing*. Every year there are new ideas for talent shows. There are even some national talent shows for robots and singing dogs!

2 Yes, most of the talent shows on TV are live. It's also possible to go to the **studio** and be a member of the **audience**. Then you can watch a talent show live on **stage**.

3 I'm sure you know the answer to this one. Usually, the people watching the show on TV and in the theatre **vote** for who (or what!) they like best. Sometimes famous people are the **judges** as well. On *Masterchef*, only the professional chefs choose the winner.

4 In a **competition** there is always a **winner**. The winner of **the final** usually gets a **prize** and sometimes becomes a **star**. On some shows the **runner-up** gets a prize too and a few of them become stars. On a few shows, the winner gets nothing – but they often become famous!

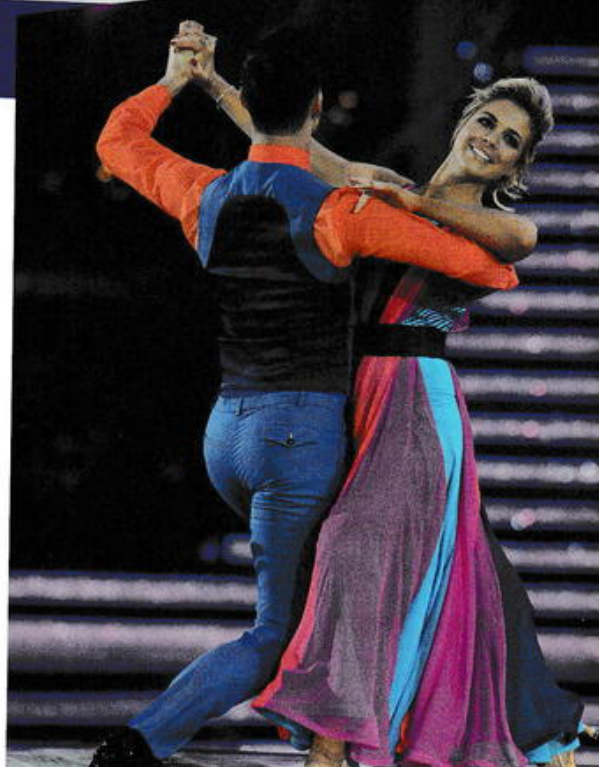
5 Most of the time, the people on the shows can say, sing or do what they want to. Sometimes, the show tells them the words to say, so they are a bit like actors or **performers**. But this doesn't happen on all the shows.

- 3 Read the article quickly and check your ideas. Complete the article with questions from Exercise 2.
- 4 Answer the questions about the article.
 - 1 What talent show is there for dancers?
 - 2 Where can people go to watch a talent show live?
 - 3 Who are the judges of talent shows?
 - 4 What happens to the runners-up on talent shows?
 - 5 Why are some of the people on talent shows a bit like actors?



TALKING POINTS

Which talent shows are popular in your country? Why?
Which one do you like best? Why?
Discuss with your partner.



VOCABULARY

Entertainment

1 Complete the sentences with the **words** from the article. Use each word once only.

EP

- 1 She's the best cook on the show. I want her to win the _____.
- 2 There were eight singers on a small _____. It was very crowded!
- 3 We went to see the live show in a very big _____.
- 4 He won a talent show four years ago. Now he's a big _____.
- 5 Sometimes the person who comes second, the _____, gets upset when another person wins.
- 6 I'd love to be in the _____ for *Got Talent* and watch the show live.
- 7 The _____ for some talent shows is money and the chance to make an album.
- 8 Talent shows often have three _____ and they choose the best person together.
- 9 Talent shows end with _____ and someone wins.
- 10 People can _____ their favourite person by text.
- 11 I think some people like being on talent shows because they are _____ and like being on TV.
- 12 The _____ of a talent show always looks very surprised – and happy of course.

2 Work with a partner. Take turns to ask and answer the questions.

- 1 Do you have any competitions in your school or your town? What are they?
- 2 Can you name any winners or runners-up from talent shows?
- 3 When did you last vote for someone on a talent show?
- 4 What do you think the best prize for a talent show is?
- 5 Would you like to be in the audience for a talent show? Why?
- 6 Would you like to be a performer in a talent show?
- 7 Do you usually agree with the judges on a talent show?
- 8 Which stars or famous people started by winning a talent show?



LISTENING

129

1 Listen to Evie talking to her friend Ben about a talent show called *Singer Search*. Who won last night's show?



129

2 Listen again. Which singer:

- 1 had a fantastic voice?
- 2 didn't choose the best song?
- 3 looked nervous?
- 4 did Ben vote for?
- 5 did Evie vote for?
- 6 wasn't a brilliant singer?
- 7 had fantastic clothes?
- 8 was the runner-up?

SPEAKING

1 Ask and answer with a partner.

- 1 What TV programmes do you like to watch?
- 2 What's your favourite programme?
- 3 What was the last thing you watched?
- 4 Where do you watch TV at home?
- 5 Do you watch TV alone or with your family?

18

MAGAZINES AND BOOKS

TEEN Magazines



ABOUT YOU

12 Watch the video then ask and answer the questions in pairs.

What books do you like to read?

What's your favourite book?

Why do you like reading it?

Does your school have a school newspaper or magazine?

What do you like reading in your school newspaper/magazine?



Film Fan >



LOL! >



Mountain Bike Monthly >



Footie Time >



GAME OVER >



I Love Animals >



VOCABULARY

AND

LISTENING

Magazines

- Look at the magazines on the website. What do you think each one is about? Discuss with your partner.
- Match the magazine descriptions to the titles in the photos.
 - Out and about on rough roads
 - The latest football news
 - Music, fashion, TV, bloggers and vloggers
 - Information on hundreds of animals
 - The newest and best films
 - All the new video games
- Which of these magazines would you like to read? Why? Tell your partner.

4

Look at the words in the box for things you find in magazines. Match the words to the definitions.



advertisement article cartoon
headline information interview
photograph review

- a written opinion about a book, film or TV programme
- information about a product to make you buy it
- a picture made using a camera
- facts about a situation, person or event
- a funny drawing
- the title of a magazine story in large letters
- a written conversation usually between people
- a piece of writing in a magazine



Listen and check. Then repeat.

- 5** Listen to Aboudi, Serena and Oliver. They're making plans for their school magazine.

- 1 Is the magazine going to be on paper or online?
- 2 Is it going to be weekly or monthly?



- 6** Listen again. Tick (✓) the things the friends want to include in their magazine.

advertisements	<input type="checkbox"/>
articles about albums	<input type="checkbox"/>
book reviews	<input type="checkbox"/>
cartoons	<input type="checkbox"/>
film reviews	<input type="checkbox"/>
information about the school	<input type="checkbox"/>
interviews with teachers	<input type="checkbox"/>
music reviews	<input type="checkbox"/>
photographs	<input type="checkbox"/>
stories	<input type="checkbox"/>
video game reviews	<input type="checkbox"/>
website addresses	<input type="checkbox"/>

GRAMMAR

Making suggestions

- 1** Look at the four ways of making suggestions. Which one is different and why?

Why don't we write down some ideas now?
 Let's have some stories too.
 Shall we include advertisements?
 Why not ask your dad about it?

A suggestion is a plan or idea that you want someone to think about.
 Look at the examples from the recording.
 The words in **purple** are different ways of making suggestions.

» **GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 155**

- 2** Put the words in the correct order to make suggestions.

Add a full stop or a question mark and start the sentence with a capital letter.

- 1 we / don't / go / to / skatepark / why / the
- 2 the / new / see / let's / film / Turkish
- 3 ask / come / Mina / why / to / not
- 4 meet / we / there / at / shall / eight

- 3** Complete the conversation. Use each **phrase** from Exercise 1 once. There is often more than one right answer.

Oliver: I think we need some more help with the magazine.
Serena: You're right. ¹ _____ ask our teacher to help? Is that a good idea?
Oliver: No, I don't think so. She's very busy. I can write a note and give it to all the teachers.
Serena: No, that's not a good idea. We want students to see it, too. ² _____ put a notice on the school website.
Oliver: Excellent idea.
Serena: ³ _____ write it now?
Oliver: OK. Magazine helpers wanted!
Serena: Great! ⁴ _____ write our names at the bottom?
Oliver: Good idea. OK, let's leave a message on the website now!

- 4** Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 1 Shall we to buy Jack magazines and chocolate to help him feel better?
- 2 Lets go to the library after school.
- 3 Why we write a review about the school play?
- 4 Why not to put advertisements in the school magazine?
- 5 Shall we to put advertisements in the magazine?



PRONUNCIATION

Intonation



- 5** Listen and repeat the phrases from the conversation about the magazine.

No, that's not a good idea.
 No, I don't think so.
 Great!
 OK.
 Excellent idea.
 Good idea.

- 6 In pairs, practise the conversation in Exercise 3.
- 7 » Work in small groups. Go to page 124.

READING

- 1 Look at two book covers. Do you know these stories? What are they about?

Discuss your ideas with a partner.

- 2 Read the reviews and check your ideas.

Read and Review



Friday Barnes, Girl Detective

Friday Barnes, Girl Detective is about 11-year-old Friday Barnes. Her parents are always busy, **so** she spends her time reading. She reads lots of detective stories. Then some thieves steal some jewellery and, guess what, Friday is able to help her detective uncle catch them. **When** she gets a reward of \$50,000, she spends the money on going to a really good boarding school. The head teacher doesn't like Friday **because** she is different from the other students. Friday is clever, too, and she solves mysteries at the school with her friend Melanie.

I loved the book. I wanted to read it to the end **as** it's very exciting. This is the first Friday Barnes book, and I'm definitely going to read more.

Annika

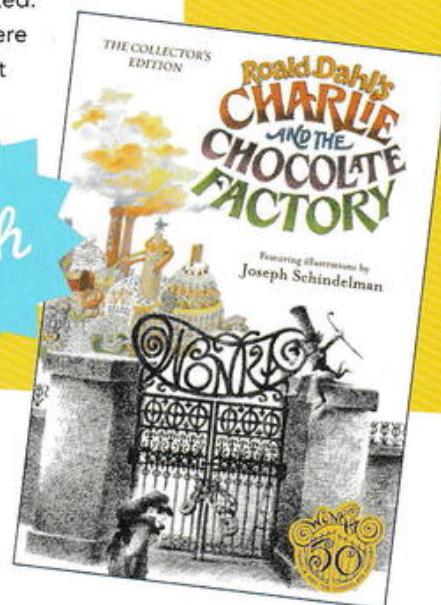
Charlie and the Chocolate Factory

Charlie Bucket lives in a small house with his family. They're very poor. One day, Charlie finds some money on the street and he decides to buy a Wonka chocolate bar with it.

When he opens the chocolate bar, Charlie finds a golden ticket inside. It's his lucky day! It's a ticket to visit Willy Wonka's famous Chocolate Factory. Charlie is very excited. Grandpa Joe is excited, too, **because** he can go on the visit with Charlie. **As** there are five golden tickets, four other children visit the factory as well. They all meet Willy Wonka and go around the factory. Lots of strange things happen! Only Charlie is left at the end, **so** he's the winner! What's the prize? Why not read the book and find out?

This book is very funny. I really liked it. It's so popular and there are two films of the book and a musical!

Josh



133

- 3 Read the reviews again and answer the questions.

- 1 How old is Friday?
- 2 Why does she read a lot?
- 3 What does she like reading?
- 4 What does she do with the \$50,000?
- 5 What do Friday and her friend Melanie do at the school?
- 6 What does Annika think of the book?
- 7 Where does Charlie get the money for the chocolate bar?
- 8 Who is Willy Wonka?
- 9 Who goes with Charlie to the factory?
- 10 How many golden tickets are there?
- 11 Who wins the prize at the end?
- 12 What does Josh think of the book?



TALKING POINTS

Which of the two books would you like to read? Why?

VOCABULARY

as, because, so and when

1 Look at the reviews again. We use the **words** to connect ideas in sentences.

EP Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 The Head Teacher doesn't like Friday | a as it's very exciting. |
| 2 I wanted to read it to the end | b so he was the winner. |
| 3 When he opened the chocolate bar, | c because she is different from the other students. |
| 4 Charlie was left at the end, | d Charlie found a golden ticket inside. |

2 Find four more sentences with **as, so, because** and **when** in the reviews on page 108.

3 Complete the review of the play with the **words** from Exercise 1.

Romeo AND Juliet

by William Shakespeare

Romeo and Juliet is a really sad story about two young people. Their families don't want them to marry ¹ _____ the families hate each other. However, Romeo and Juliet are in love and they get married. They know their families will be very angry, ² _____ they don't tell them. Juliet's family don't know she's married and they find a husband for her. But she can't marry this man ³ _____ she's already married to Romeo. Juliet is very unhappy.

She drinks something to make her sleep, so her family will think she's dead. Then she goes to sleep. Romeo finds Juliet first and thinks she's dead, so he kills himself. But Juliet isn't dead! ⁴ _____ she wakes up, she sees Romeo is dead and kills herself. And that's the end!

I saw the play at the City Theatre. The actors were all great and I cried at the end. I loved it. Go and see it.

LISTENING

1 Listen to part of the radio programme: *Good Morning Mike*. Phoebe phones in to review a film.

What's the name of the film Phoebe is talking about?



2 Listen to the review again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (x).

- Phoebe lives in London.
- The guitar player gets a job in a school.
- Everyone in the The School of Rock band is a teacher.
- The School of Rock get first prize in Battle of the Bands.
- Phoebe watched the DVD of the film last week.
- Phoebe thinks the film is very good.

WRITING



PREPARE TO WRITE

A review

GET READY Read the three reviews on pages 108 and 109 again.

Which parts of the reviews *tell the story* of the book and which parts are the writers' *opinions*?

What tense do we use for writing a review?

PLAN Think about a film, play or book that you like.

Make notes about:

- the story of the film, play or book.
 - your opinion.
- Organise your ideas into two paragraphs.
- Paragraph 1: the story of the film
 - Paragraph 2: your opinion.

WRITE Write your review of a film, a play or a book in about 50 words. Use the correct tenses and connect your ideas with *as, because, so* and *when*.

IMPROVE In pairs, read your review and your partner's. Check for mistakes.

Rewrite your review and give it to your teacher for a class magazine.

CULTURE

BRITISH TV AROUND THE WORLD

- 1 In pairs, discuss the questions with your partner.
 - 1 Can you name any British TV programmes?
 - 2 Do you prefer watching cooking shows, nature programmes or dramas?
 - 3 How often do you watch TV in English?
- 2 Read and match the photos (A–C) to the texts. Who do you think is the most similar to you?
- 3 Match the headings to the texts.

Talent shows Nature shows Cooking shows

- 4 Read the texts again and answer the questions.
 - 1 What does Brad like doing?
 - 2 What is Ryan's favourite show? Why?
 - 3 When do Eve and her family watch nature programmes?
 - 4 Why does Eve's brother like *The Blue Planet*?
 - 5 What programme do Karen's parents always watch?
 - 6 What music programme does Karen like? Why?
- 5 Complete the sentences with the **highlighted** words in the text.

- 1 I love sea animals. I love swimming too and I'm taking a _____ course, so I can go diving on holiday with my family this summer.
- 2 When I go on nature walks with my family, we like taking photos of birds and animals in their _____.
- 3 I'm always at home to watch my favourite TV programme on Monday evening at seven o'clock. I never _____ it!
- 4 We all need to help our _____ and keep it clean.
- 5 On talent shows people can sing, dance and do magic or _____.

TALKING POINTS

Do you know the programmes Ryan, Eve and Karen are talking about?
Do you watch them?
Which ones don't you like? Why?

FACTFILE

British TV

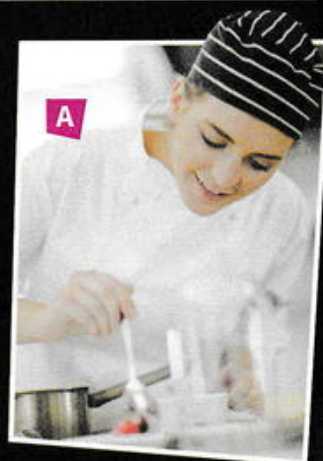
British TV programmes are popular around the world.

According to the BBC, there is an increase in people watching British TV in different countries. People watch programmes from their own countries too, but thanks to internet and cable TV, it's easier than ever to watch international programmes.

British **talent shows**, **cooking shows**, **nature programmes** and **dramas** are all popular with international viewers.

THAT'S ENTERTAINMENT!

Watching television is a popular free-time activity for many people around the world. Find out more about what young people are watching – and why.



RYAN New Zealand

- 1 _____
My parents' friend Brad has a small restaurant in Auckland and he loves cooking. I sometimes go to visit him with my parents at weekends. When we go to his house, we walk around town during the day. Then, we love watching shows and competitions about cooking in the evening. Brad's favourite show is **MasterChef** because it gives him ideas for his restaurant. I prefer **The Great British Bake Off** because I love cooking and eating cakes and sweets!





135



136

6 Listen to John talking to his friend Amber about his homework. Which show is he going to write about?

- a Horrible Histories
- b Britain's Got Talent
- c MasterChef Junior



136

7 Listen to the conversation again and choose the correct words, a or b.

- 1 John is doing homework
 - a for his German lesson
 - b for his French lesson
- 2 John likes watching _____ on TV.
 - a different programmes
 - b French programmes
- 3 Amber _____ watching cooking programmes.
 - a loves
 - b dislikes
- 4 John likes learning _____.
 - a new meals
 - b new songs
- 5 Amber _____ what *Horrible Histories* is.
 - a doesn't know
 - b knows
- 6 John loves _____.
 - a reading about nature
 - b reading about history



136

8 Listen to the conversation again and write the things John likes about the programmes.

EVE Canada

2

I love going on nature walks with my family and watching wildlife. In the evenings when it's too cold or too rainy to do things outside, my family and I like watching programmes about science or animals at home.

My older brother loves scuba diving so his favourite programme is *The Blue Planet*. Mum and I love watching *Elephant Diaries*. This TV show helps baby elephants return to their natural habitat.

PROJECT

A TV programme timetable

You are working at a TV station and making plans for a new channel. In small groups, plan a programme timetable for Saturday day times from 10 am to 2 pm.

- Make a list of possible programmes you think people like.
- Decide on the times of the programmes.
- Think of why the programmes are interesting and what people can learn from them.
- Fill in the table in your notebook.

Time	Programme (title/name of programme or type of programme (comedy, nature show, drama ...))	Audience (children, teenagers, adults)	Why is the programme interesting?
10 am– _____ am		It is for _____	People can learn _____

- Present your ideas to another group.
- Tell the class about your programme timetable. Decide on which programme timetable you like best.

KAREN Northern Ireland

3

I have to do my homework first before I watch TV, but one programme my parents never miss is *Britain's Got Talent*. They love it when there are people on the show doing gymnastics or acrobatics.

I love music, singing and dancing. I get bored watching *Britain's Got Talent* because a lot of people on the programme do other things. I'm a good singer, so I prefer watching *The Voice* in my free time.

19 SCHOOL CAN BE FUN!



ABOUT YOU

What kind of school trips do you go on with your school?
Do you enjoy them?
What was the last school trip you went on? What did you do?

VOCABULARY

AND

LISTENING

Trip activities

- 1 Look at the photos of people on school trips. What activities are they doing? Match the photos A-J to the words and phrases in the box.

canoeing cooking on a fire
dancing at a disco going on a nature walk
going round a museum
going to an amusement park sailing
visiting a farm visiting an aquarium
watching a show



Listen and check. Then repeat.

2

In small groups, ask and answer the questions.

- Which of these activities do you do on school trips with your school?
- Which ones do you enjoy?
- Which ones would you like to try?
- Which ones would you not like to do? Why not?



3

Listen to a teacher talking to a class about a school trip and answer the questions.

- Where is Tall Trees activity centre?
- Which activities in Exercise 1 do you hear?



4

For each question, write the correct answer in each gap. Write one word or a number or a date or a time. Then listen again and check.

End-of-term school trip for Year 8

Name of Activity Centre:

Tall Trees

Date we leave:

1 _____ July

Time to get to school:

2 _____ am

What to bring for the journey:

3 _____

What to pack

✓ for water activities:

4 _____ things

✓ for nature walks:

trainers and 5 _____

GRAMMAR

have to / don't have to

1 Match the two halves of the sentences.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 Everyone has to be at school | a to eat. |
| 2 Mr Peters has to check | b smart clothes to the disco. |
| 3 You have to wear | c our uniform on the journey? |
| 4 You don't have to bring anything | d your names. |
| 5 Do we have to wear | e at eight o'clock |

2 Now read the examples and then complete the rules with a and b.

Everyone **has to** be at school at eight o'clock.
You don't **have to** bring anything to eat.

- 1 **have to** means _____
2 **don't have to** means _____
- a no obligation: you have a choice and you can do this if you want.
b obligation: You have no choice. You can't say 'no'!

3 Complete the table with the correct form of **have to**.

Obligation	No obligation	Question form
I/you/we/they _____ go	I/you/we/they _____ go	_____ I/you/we/they _____
He/she/it _____ go	He/she/it _____ go	go? _____ he/she/it _____ go?

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 156

4 Listen to Leo asking about the school trip. Tick (✓) the things he has to do.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| get up early every day | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| go sailing | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| go swimming | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| go to the disco | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| leave his phone at home | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| share a bedroom | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| help with the cleaning | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| do any school work | <input type="checkbox"/> |

5 Make pairs of sentences about Leo using **have to** / **doesn't have to** and **can/can't**.

He has to get up early. He can't stay in bed late.

6 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- You don't bring anything – it's not necessary.
- Please, you need come! It's going to be a great concert.
- We haven't to pay for the skate park.
- You pay nothing for the disco. It's free!
- We have get up early to go sailing.
- You has to pack warm clothes for the school trip.

PRONUNCIATION *have to / has to*

7 Listen and repeat.

- I have to go shopping.
- He has to do his homework.
- Do you have to go now?
- Does he have to pay today?
- We have to write a story.
- She has to win this match.

8 In pairs, ask and answer about what you have to do/don't have to/can/can't do this weekend. Use these ideas or your own.

visit anyone?
do any homework?
get up early/ late?
go shopping?
do any cleaning?
go to bed early / late?

Do you have to visit anyone this weekend?

No, I can stay at home if I want to.

READING

- 1 Read the first paragraph of the article. Do you think the flipped classroom sounds like a good idea? Why / why not?

141

THE FLIPPED CLASSROOM

What's it all about?

In a normal classroom, the teacher stands at the front of the room and gives a lesson and the students listen and take notes. Then they go home and do their homework. In a flipped classroom, everything is the other way around. Students study at home from a textbook or online videos, and then discuss the topic and do 'homework' exercises or projects in class. Lots of schools are trying it, but is it a good idea? We spoke to a teacher and two students to find out more.

Penny – teacher

The flipped classroom is hard work for the teacher, especially at the beginning. You have to make videos of every topic in the textbook for the students to watch on their computers at home. That takes a really long time! But it means I can spend time in class helping students one-to-one. I love that – I wasn't able to do it before.

Caitlin – student

I love coming into the classroom ready to talk about the topic and feeling I understand it. In a normal class, I often feel nervous, because if I don't understand, I have to ask the teacher to stop the lesson and explain. But with a video, I can watch it as many times as I like until I understand it. It's great!

Dylan – student

We tried the flipped classroom for one term in maths, but there were a few problems. Some students didn't watch the videos before the lesson, so they couldn't do the exercises in class. Also, when the teacher was going round helping people, we found it really easy to stop working and just chat. We did a test at the end of the term and we all got terrible marks. I usually pass every test, but I failed that one.

- 2 Read the article and answer the questions. Write P (Penny), C (Caitlin) or D (Dylan).

Who said this about the flipped classroom?


- 1 I If I need to, I can repeat parts of the lesson.
- 2 I like being able to explain things during the lesson.
- 3 Lots of us spent too much time talking to each other.
- 4 There were people who did not prepare for the classes.
- 5 I don't have to be scared about what's going to happen in the lesson.
- 6 Getting everything ready wasn't easy.

- 3 In pairs, discuss the questions.

- 1 What do you think are the best/worst things about flipped classrooms?
- 2 Would you like to try it? For which subjects?



TALKING POINTS

 14 Watch the video about a school called Redroofs. Then ask and answer the questions with a partner. What do you like about your school?

Is your school bigger or smaller than Redroofs?

How many children are in your year?

What subjects do you study?

What are your teachers like?

VOCABULARY

School collocations

- 1** Match the verbs to the nouns to make phrases. Use the article on page 114 to help you. Some verbs go with than one noun.

do	an exercise
fail	a project
get	homework
give	a lesson
pass	marks
study from	notes
take	a textbook
	a test

- 2** Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- I took lots of *notes / projects* in my last lesson.
- I really hope I *pass / fail* this test!
- Some people like studying from *textbooks / projects* and other people prefer videos.
- The maths teacher gave us six *exercises / homework* to do at home.
- What *mark / test* did you get in your science exam?
- I'm doing a history *project / homework* at the moment, about the Romans.

- 3** In pairs, compare your school with the one in the article. Use the phrases in Exercise 1.

They study from the textbook at home, but we use ours in class.



LISTENING

- 1** Maya goes to a boarding school. She sleeps there and only goes home for holidays. Listen to her describing her school. Number the photos in the order you hear about them.



- 2** Listen again. Complete the article Maya wrote about her school with the missing words.

I go to a boarding school called Hartland School. It has about ¹ students.

I have to share a bedroom with ² other girls. We can put ³ of our family on the walls.

There's a library where we do our homework. We start studying at ⁴ every evening.

We work really hard at my school. We even have lessons on ⁵ mornings!

After homework, we can go to the ⁶ room to have some fun.

We have meals in a big ⁷ and we have to help with the ⁸ afterwards.

We have to do sports at my school. Next term, we're going to do ⁹.

SPEAKING

- 1** Make a presentation about your perfect school. Work with a partner. Plan what you want to say. Think about:

- a name for your school
- the size of your school
- places in your school
- what students can/can't do
- what students have to / don't have to do
- what the teachers are like
- what subjects you study

- 2** Present your ideas to another pair. Which school sounds most fun to go to?

20 FAMILIES

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Family

- 1** Complete the table with the words in the box and the family words from About you.

EP

aunt cousin grandchild
granddaughter grandfather
grandmother grandparent grandson
nephew niece uncle

Male	Female	Male or female

143

Listen and check. Then repeat.

144

- 2** Listen to Kate describing her family. Complete her family tree with the names in the box.

Iris Jana Kasia Liz Rory
Sue Wiktor



ABOUT YOU

In pairs, tell your partner three things about your family. Use some of these words:

brother/sister child/children daughter/son
father/mother husband/wife

144

- 3** Listen again and match the people in the photos to their names in the family tree.

- 4** Make eight sentences about Kate's family tree. In pairs, compare your sentences with your partner's. Are any of your sentences the same?

Tony is Jessie's grandfather.

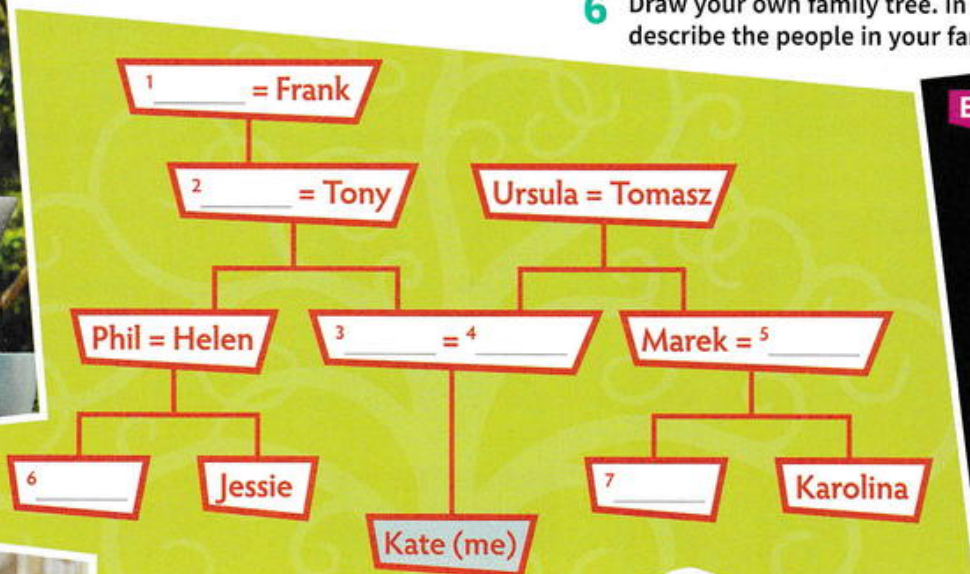
Marek is Jana and Karolina's dad.

144

- 5** Look at the photos. Describe the people using some of the words in the box.

beautiful blonde dark fair
good-looking old pretty short
slim tall young

- 6** Draw your own family tree. In small groups, describe the people in your family.



GRAMMAR

Adverbs of manner

- 1 Look at the sentences from the listening and think about the words in **purple**. These are adverbs of manner.

I know a bit of Polish but when people speak **fast**, I can't understand them!
Jana plays the piano really **well**.
She wins **easily** every time we play!
Her family worked **hard** and sent her to England to study music.
I have to hold them **carefully** because they're very old.

Choose the correct words to complete the rules.

- Adverbs of manner describe *how* / *when* we do things.
- We make *many* / *all* adverbs of manner by adding *-ly* to an adjective.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE PAGE 157

- 2 Look at the sentences in Exercise 1. Find three adverbs that don't end in *-ly*. Write their adjectives.
- 3 Look at the spelling rules below and then write the adverbs for the adjectives in the box.

bad	easy	loud	noisy	quick
quiet	wonderful			

Adjective	Adverb
slow	slowly (add <i>-ly</i>)
happy	happily (change <i>y</i> to <i>i</i>)
careful	carefully (double the <i>l</i>)

- 4 Complete the questions with adverbs from Exercises 1 and 3. Then in pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- Do you do your homework _____?
- Can you run _____?
- Can you sing _____?
- Do you speak _____ on the bus?
- Do you play music _____ in your bedroom?
- Can you make friends _____?

- 5 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 1 I liked the competition because both teams played very good.
2 I thought that film was really badly!
3 You should think about that very careful.
4 My friend ran really fastly in the race.
5 You can find easily my house.



PRONUNCIATION

The letter *i*

- 6 Work with a partner. Look at the underlined letters. What sound does *i* make in the words? Put them into the correct column in the table.

child	children	find
interesting	kind	quickly
quite	sing	sister
wife		slim

/ɪ/ milk

/aɪ/ night



Listen and check. Then repeat.

- 7 Complete the advice with the words in the box. Change the adjective into an adverb where necessary.

careful	correct	difficult	happy
important	interesting		

How to find out about your family history

- Every family has lots of _____ stories in its past.
- It's not too _____ to find out about your family history.
- Ask older family members about their parents and grandparents. They will talk _____ for hours about this.
- Listen _____ and write down what they tell you.
- The most _____ thing you need to find out is when and where people were born.
- Write everything down _____ because you don't want mistakes in your family tree.

- 8 Complete the table about your family. Under *Interesting information*, put an adjective (e.g. *clever*) and a verb plus adverb (e.g. *sings badly*). Then in small groups, talk about the people in your table.

Family member	Interesting information
Mum	clever sings badly

- 1 Look at the photo and describe it. What do you think it's like living in a big family? Write three ideas. Read the article quickly to see if your ideas are included.

What's it like to grow up in a big family?

by Ella Blackstone

I am the oldest of eight children. To me, my family is completely normal, but other people find it amazing. So, for everyone who's interested, here's what it's like to grow up in a big family!

Remembering the names, ages and birthdays of all your family members is **really** difficult. My parents often call my brothers and sisters by the wrong names. This is **probably** why our pets never had names.

Some of my friends get money for doing jobs around the house, but we **certainly** don't. In our house, the dishwasher is on **nearly** all the time, there are always clothes to wash

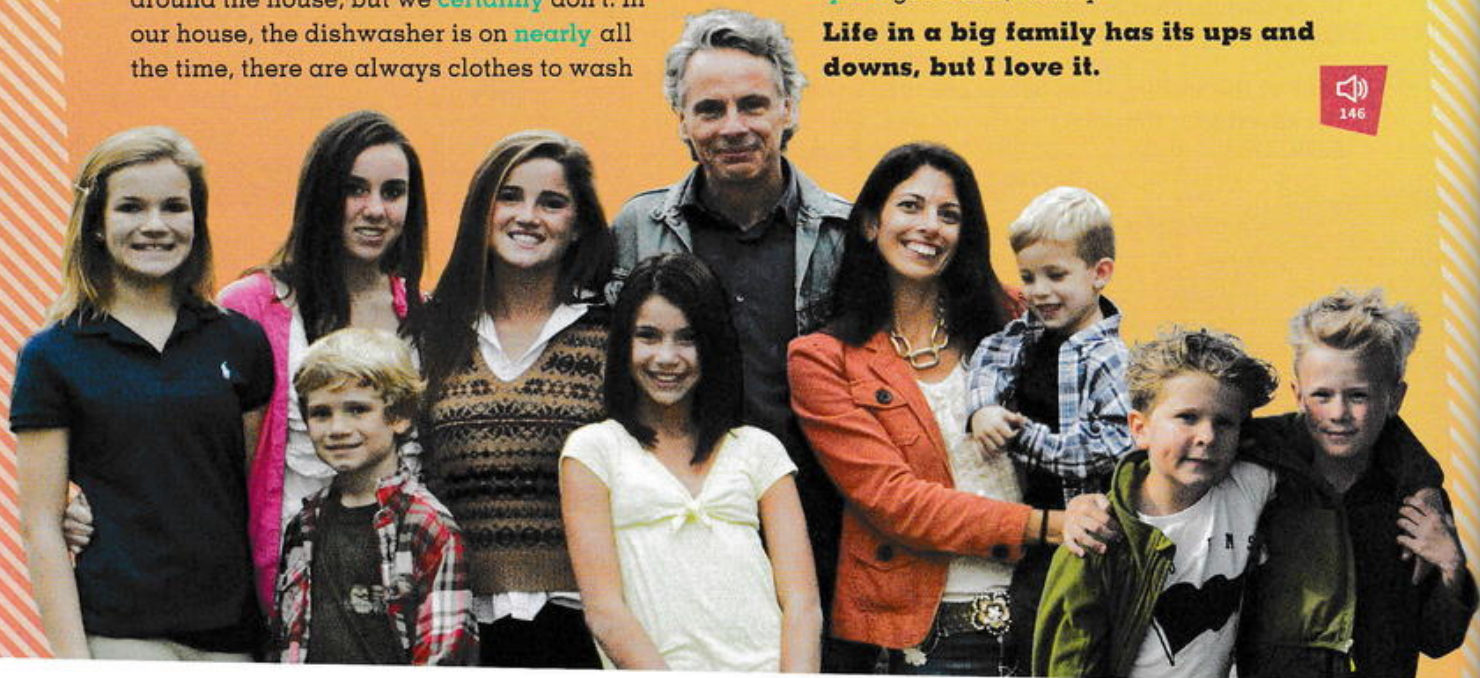
or put away, and the tidying up never ends. We all have to help, even the little ones.

Every shelf in our house is full of prizes, for basketball, tennis, cricket and rugby. We are all really competitive. The clever ones want to be the cleverest, the pretty ones the prettiest, and the funny ones the funniest.

Being slow is not a good thing in a big family. You have to move quickly to get into the shower or to get the best seat in the minibus (big families don't have cars). And you have to eat fast, especially if there's cake in the house! Yesterday, I saw my 7-year-old sister in my old dress. She probably got it from my 15-year old sister, who gets most of my things. We have to share bedrooms, toys, and even our parents' time. Sharing is not always easy, but we are **quite** good at it, luckily.

Life in a big family has its ups and downs, but I love it.

146



- 2 Read the article again. Are the sentences right (✓) or wrong (x)?

- 1 Ella has seven younger brothers and sisters.
- 2 Her family enjoyed choosing names for their pets.
- 3 Ella and her brothers and sisters earn money from helping around the house.
- 4 The younger members of Ella's family also have to do jobs.
- 5 The children in Ella's family do well at sport.
- 6 Ella says being fast is useful in a big family.
- 7 She says she gave an old dress to her seven-year-old sister.
- 8 Her family hate sharing everything with each other.

In pairs, compare your answers.



TALKING POINTS

Do you come from a big family?

YES

NO

How is your family the same/different to the one in the article?

Would you like to be part of a big family? Why/Why not?

1 Look at the **adverbs** in the article and match them to the meanings.

EP

- 1 Which one means 'very much'?
- 2 Which one means 'very close to'?
- 3 Which one means 'not completely'?
- 4 Which one means '100% true'?
- 5 Which one means 'maybe'?

2 Complete each sentence with a different adverb from Exercise 1.

- 1 Sally's my best friend. I _____ like her.
- 2 In my family, we all eat dinner together _____ every night.
- 3 I'm not sure about this colour. It's _____ nice, I suppose.
- 4 I don't know if Grace is coming to the party, but Tim _____ is. I know that for sure.
- 5 'What's the time?' 'I'm not sure but it's _____ about 2 o'clock.'

3 Work in pairs. Write three true and three false sentences about your family using the adverbs in Exercise 1. Take turns to read your sentences and guess which are true and which are false.

My brother's really tall. My mum's probably driving at the moment.

LISTENING

1 Listen to three young people talking about who they live with. Match the speakers to the pictures of families A-C.



2

Listen again. Who do you think is talking? Write Sammy, Sally or Harry next to the sentences.

- 1 I live with one of my grandparents.
- 2 I have to travel quite a long way to see my dad.
- 3 My sister is getting married soon.
- 4 I don't spend a lot of time with my cousins.
- 5 My brother and I sleep in the same room.
- 6 There are two families in my home.

WRITING

PREPARE TO WRITE

A description of your family

GET READY Read Sally's description of her family. What kinds of words are missing from the gaps: grammar words or vocabulary words?

Complete the description. Write ONE word for each gap.

Example: ⁰ my

To: Sally
From: Gabrielle

I live with ⁰ _____ parents in a three-bedroom house. I'm the only child in the family – I haven't got any brothers or sisters. My grandfather lives ¹ _____ us as well – he's in the room next ² _____ mine. He's 78, and he tells lots of interesting stories. I've also got four cousins, and I love seeing ³ _____ too. They're ⁴ _____ bit older than me, and they don't look like me. I'm quite tall and I've got dark hair, but they're short and they've got fair hair.

Write soon and tell me all about ⁵ _____ family.

PLAN Make notes about your family.

WRITE Write a description of your family in 70 words or more.

IMPROVE In pairs, read your description and your partner's. Check for mistakes. Give your partner two ideas to make their description better. Use your partner's advice to rewrite your description.

LIFE SKILLS EMOTIONAL SKILLS

BEING A GOOD FRIEND



LIFE SKILLS

Being a good friend

A good friend

- understands your feelings
- says sorry when they are wrong
- understands you and knows when you have a problem

1 Read the sentences and answer the questions.

It is better to have a few good friends than a lot of friends.

To know how someone else feels, put yourself in their shoes.

- 1 What do you think the sentences mean?
- 2 Do you agree with the sentences? Why? / Why not?
- 3 Which sentence do you prefer? Why?

2 Choose two qualities that you think are important in good friends. In pairs, compare your ideas.

They listen carefully

They make me feel good

They are there for me when I have problem

They help me do my best

They give me their opinion

They trust me

3 Read the text quickly. Match sections 1-3 to photos A-C. Are you a good friend?

A



1

Friends are an important part of our lives. It's sometimes difficult to make friends and it's not always easy to keep them. To have **close** friends, it's **essential** to be a good friend. The big question is what can you do to be a good friend and keep your friends?

B



4 Complete the sentences with **highlighted** words from the text.

- 1 It's _____ to be a good friend to have friends.
- 2 It's not always easy to make and keep _____ friends.
- 3 Maybe your friend is worried about a bad _____ in an exam.
- 4 Good friends give _____ and they tell you the best thing to do in a difficult situation.
- 5 It is sometimes important to be _____ so you can know yourself.
- 6 Remember that the longest _____ you have is with yourself.

2

Good friends usually share interests and like doing the same things. They have fun together but they help each other in difficult times, too. For example, when someone gets a bad mark in an exam, does not get on the football team or feels sad or alone, a good friend tries to understand the situation and offers help.

Your friend is sad and you don't know what to do. Maybe you can call them, visit them or make them a card. When a friend is worried about an exam, you can help them study. If your friend doesn't get on the football team, you can practise together after school.

Remember, a good friend listens carefully and gives advice when possible. So, listening to people and putting yourself in their shoes helps make, and keep, friends.

3

It's important to have friends to help you, but it's also necessary to know how to be alone and to be sure of yourself. Don't forget, the longest friendship in your life is with yourself!



5 Listen to Karl talking to Martha. What does Martha do?

- a She tells Karl her problems.
- b She listens to Karl and tries to help him.
- c She calls Alex.



6 Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 How do you know where Karl and Martha are?
- 2 Why is Karl feeling sad?
- 3 What did Karl do immediately after the argument?
- 4 According to Martha, what do good friends do?
- 5 Does Martha think Karl should call Alex that day?
- 6 When does Martha tell Karl to send a message?



TALKING POINTS

Who do you talk to when you need help and support? A friend? A family member? A teacher?



7 Now listen again and match the two halves of the sentences.



USEFUL LANGUAGE

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 Why don't you ... | a wait until tomorrow. |
| 2 I think you should ... | b worry. |
| 3 You shouldn't ... | c to wait. |
| 4 It's a good idea ... | d send him a message? |

PROJECT

A helpful poster

In small groups, choose problem A or B below. Talk together and think of some advice and write ideas in your notebook. Use expressions from Exercise 7.

- Draw a picture of the situation you chose.
- Make a poster with your advice and a picture.
- Present your poster to another group or to the class.

A I have no idea what to do. My best friend always says bad things about our friend Jack when he isn't with us. What should I do?

B My friend Anna is very sad these days. She spends her weekends alone and doesn't want to go out. I'm worried about her. How can I help her?

REVIEW 5

UNITS 17-20

VOCABULARY

1 Write a word to link each group of words.

Complete the words for the groups.

0 aunt cousin nephew niece
f a m i l y

1 study pass fail teach
s _ _ o _ _

2 dance music friends fun
d _ _ _ o _

3 headline photographs
articles advertisement
m _ _ _ z i _ e

4 channel remote control
the news programme
t _ _ e _ i _ _ n

5 winner performer prize
talent show
c _ _ p _ _ _ _ _ n

2 Put the words in order to make questions. Then complete the answers with adverbs.

- can / dance / well / you / ?
No, I dance _____.
- easily / you / new / do / things / learn / ?
No, I have to work very _____.
- always / you / school / speak / do / at / quietly / ?
No, sometimes I speak _____.

3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

album cartoons fan
reviews star the final

- The film got good _____ in the newspapers.
- I love Ed Sheeran's first _____. His music's really good.
- My little brother watches _____ on TV when he gets home from school.
- It's _____ of the talent show tonight. Then we'll know the name of the winner!
- My favourite film _____ is Jennifer Lawrence.
- I'm a big _____ of rock music. I love it!

GRAMMAR

1 Read the rules about entering the talent show. Complete Emma's email to Lauren with the words and phrases in the box.

can can't don't have to have to x3

TALENT SHOW

Rules for entering

AGE: 14 or over

GROUPS: possible but only up to five people

PRICE TO ENTER: £10 per person

Just fill in the form on our website!

Pay by 31 July.

To: Lauren
From: Emma
Date: 2 May

Reply Forward

I've got some information about the talent show. You ¹ _____ be 14 or over to enter. We ² _____ enter as a group, but the group ³ _____ have more than five people in it. If we want to enter, we ⁴ _____ pay £10 each, and we ⁵ _____ fill in a form on the website. We ⁶ _____ pay yet; we can wait until the end of July. What do you think? Shall we do it?

2 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- He drives very good / well.
- The weather there was very good / well.
- Shall / Can you come to my house at 7 pm?

Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- Why not to see a film?
- You don't bring anything except your clothes and your money.
- Why not trying phoning her later.
- Lets choose some more photographs for the magazine.

LISTENING

- 1 Listen to a boy called Owen talking about a picture of his family. Listen and write the correct letter beside each name.

Nora	_____	Colin	_____
Abby	_____	Lily	_____
Rob	_____	Liam	_____
Grace	_____	Max	_____
Ryan	_____		



Which person is Owen?

READING

- 1 For each question, write the correct answer in each gap. Write ONE word in each gap.

Dear Daisy

I'm ⁰ having a great time on my school trip here in Spain. I've made ¹ _____ new friend. She's staying in ² _____ same activity centre as me. ³ _____ name is Natalya and she comes ⁴ _____ Russia. She's a year older ⁵ _____ me.

Yesterday morning, we went to visit a museum. There were lots ⁶ _____ very interesting things there.

See you soon.



SPEAKING

- 1 Put the words in order to make questions.

- kind / programmes / TV / like / you / do / what / of / ?
- magazines / like / do / which / reading / you / ?
- activities / do / after / what / you / do / school / ?
- which / home / live / members / at / you / family / with / ?

In pairs, ask and answer the questions. Take turns to speak.

- 2 Here are some pictures of different school trip activities. Do you like these activities? Say why or why not. Talk about the activities with your partner.



- 3 In pairs, ask and answer these questions. Take turns to speak.

Do you think ...

- going to museums is boring?
- visiting theme parks is expensive?
- going camping is fun?
- visiting a castle is interesting?
- going on a nature walk is exciting?

Which school trip activities do you like best?

- 4 In pairs, talk about school trips. Take turns to speak.

Which is more fun, learning in a classroom or learning on a school trip?

What school trips would you like to do in the future?



EXTRA ACTIVITIES

UNIT 10

VOCABULARY AND READING, PAGE 62

2

Quiz result?

More Yes than No answers.

You are careful with your money and want to buy things for a good price. You usually think and look before you buy.

More No than Yes answers.

You love clothes and shopping, and you like spending money. You don't always think before you buy and you spend a bit too much sometimes.

UNIT 10

PREPARE TO WRITE, PAGE 65

Well, I found a great jacket on the internet. It was black and it had a really cool design on the back. You can't pay in cash of course, so my mum paid for it with her credit card. After that, we waited and waited but it didn't come. After two weeks I emailed the company, but they didn't answer. Then, six days later, it finally arrived. But the jacket was the wrong size. It was too small *and* it was blue. I returned it and asked them to send me the right one, but they emailed me to say they didn't have one in my size in black. And my mum is still waiting for them to return her money.

UNIT 12

GRAMMAR, PAGE 73

7 Write true sentences with superlatives. Use the ideas below or your own ideas.

The most famous person in my country is the president.

easy
famous
good
old
popular

school subject
person in my country
computer game I play
show on TV
place in my country

Compare your answers with a partner.

UNIT 18

GRAMMAR, PAGE 107

7 In small groups, plan a class magazine.

Think about the questions.

What would you like:

- your class magazine to be called?
- to include in your class magazine?

Do you want it to be a paper magazine or an online one?

Is the magazine going to be weekly, monthly, termly or yearly?

Step 1

Suggest as many ideas as you can in your group for your class magazine.

Let's ...

Why don't we ... ?

Shall we ... ?

Why not ... ?

Step 2

Choose the five best ideas to share with the class. Tell the class.

Step 3

As a class, discuss and choose the best three ideas.

UNIT 11**SPEAKING, PAGE 71**

3 Student A will ask you for information about dishes A–C. Answer his or her questions.

Then ask Student A questions about items D–F on page 71. Use the following questions to help you.

What are the ingredients in ...?

Does ... contain meat?

What is ...?

How much is a bowl of ...?

Where is ... from?

Then choose the dish you want to buy.

A

American barbecue

Large burger £5.00

Ingredients: Meat, bun



Burger with cheese £5.50

Barbecue sauce 50p

Ingredients: Meat, cheese, bun

**B**

Aloo tikki 50p each

Ingredients: potatoes, peas, chilli, onions

**C**

Shish kebab £4.00

Ingredients: Chicken or lamb, onions, spices





EXTRA ACTIVITIES

UNIT 11

SPEAKING, PAGE 71

- 3 Student A, ask Student B questions about items A-C on page 71. Then choose the dish you want to buy. Use the following questions to help you.

What are the ingredients in ...?

Does ... contain meat?

What is ...?

How much is a bowl of ...?

Where is ... from?

Student B will ask for information about these dishes. Answer his or her questions.

D

Yakisoba

Fried noodles with vegetables,
meat and onions

small bowl ¥2.00

large bowl ¥3.00

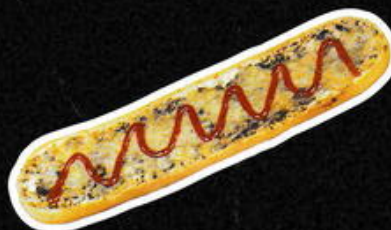


E

Zapiekanka

Bread with mushrooms
and cheese ¥1.50

or grilled meat served
with fried onions ¥3.20



F

Ponchiki – 50p each

Lovely sweet doughnuts!





VOCABULARY LIST

UNIT 1

SPORTS

do athletics /du: æθ'letiks/ verb phrase

do gymnastics /du: dʒɪm'næstiks/ verb phrase

go cycling /gəu 'saɪklɪŋ/ verb phrase

go sailing /gəu 'seɪlɪŋ/ verb phrase

go skating /gəu 'skeɪtɪŋ/ verb phrase

go snowboarding /gəu 'snəʊbɔ:diŋ/ verb phrase

go surfing /gəu 'sɜ:fɪŋ/ verb phrase

play badminton /pleɪ 'bædmɪntən/ verb phrase

play baseball /pleɪ 'beɪsbɔ:l/ verb phrase

play hockey /pleɪ 'hɒki/ verb phrase

play rugby /pleɪ 'rʌɡbi/ verb phrase

play table tennis /pleɪ 'teɪbl tenɪs/ verb phrase

play volleyball /pleɪ 'vɒlibɔ:l/ verb phrase

SPORTS EQUIPMENT

ball /bɔ:l/ noun

bat /bæt/ noun

board /bɔ:d/ noun

racket /'ræktɪ/ noun

stick /stɪk/ noun

UNIT 2

DAILY ROUTINES

brush your hair /brʌʃ jɔ:r heər/ verb phrase

check your messages /tʃek jɔ:r 'mesɪdʒɪs/ verb phrase

clean your teeth /kli:n jɔ:r ti:θ/ verb phrase

get dressed /get drest/ verb phrase

have breakfast /hæv 'brekfəst/ verb phrase

leave the house /li:v ði: haʊs/ verb phrase

prepare your school bag /prɪ'peər jɔ:r sku:l bæɡ/ verb phrase

put on your shoes /put ɒn jɔ:r ʃu:z/ verb phrase

tidy your room /'taɪdi jɔ:r ru:m/ verb phrase

wake up /weɪk ʌp/ phrasal verb

FOOD

avocado /ævə'kɑ:dəʊ/ noun

bread /bred/ noun

cabbage /'kæbɪdʒ/ noun

cereal /'sɪəriəl/ noun

cheese /tʃi:z/ noun

cucumber /'kju:kʌmbər/ noun

fish /fɪʃ/ noun

fruit /fru:t/ noun

honey /'hʌni/ noun

hot chocolate /hɒt 'tʃɒkələt/ noun

jam /dʒæm/ noun

mango /'mæŋɡəʊ/ noun

pasta /'pæstə/ noun

rice /raɪs/ noun

toast /təʊst/ noun

vegetables /'vedʒtəbəlz/ noun

yoghurt /'jɒɡət/ noun



VOCABULARY LIST

UNIT 1

SPORTS

- do athletics /du: æθ'letiks/ *verb phrase*
do gymnastics /du: dʒɪm'næstiks/ *verb phrase*
go cycling /gəu 'saɪklɪŋ/ *verb phrase*
go sailing /gəu 'seɪlɪŋ/ *verb phrase*
go skating /gəu 'skeɪtɪŋ/ *verb phrase*
go snowboarding /gəu 'snəʊbɔ:diŋ/ *verb phrase*
go surfing /gəu 'sɜ:fɪŋ/ *verb phrase*
play badminton /pleɪ 'bædmɪntən/ *verb phrase*
play baseball /pleɪ 'beɪsbɔ:l/ *verb phrase*
play hockey /pleɪ 'hɒki/ *verb phrase*
play rugby /pleɪ 'rʌɡbi/ *verb phrase*
play table tennis /pleɪ 'teɪbl tenɪs/ *verb phrase*
play volleyball /pleɪ 'vɒlibɔ:l/ *verb phrase*

SPORTS EQUIPMENT

- ball /bɔ:l/ *noun*
bat /bæt/ *noun*
board /bɔ:d/ *noun*
racket /'rækɪt/ *noun*
stick /stɪk/ *noun*

UNIT 2

DAILY ROUTINES

- brush your hair /brʌʃ jɔ:r heər/ *verb phrase*
check your messages /tʃek jɔ:r 'mesɪdʒɪs/ *verb phrase*
clean your teeth /kli:n jɔ:r ti:θ/ *verb phrase*
get dressed /get drest/ *verb phrase*
have breakfast /hæv 'brekfəst/ *verb phrase*
leave the house /li:v ði: haʊs/ *verb phrase*
prepare your school bag /prɪ'peər jɔ:r sku:l bæɡ/ *verb phrase*
put on your shoes /pʊt ɒn jɔ:r ʃu:z/ *verb phrase*
tidy your room /'taɪdi jɔ:r ru:m/ *verb phrase*
wake up /weɪk ʌp/ *phrasal verb*

FOOD

- avocado /ævə'kɑ:dəʊ/ *noun*
bread /bred/ *noun*
cabbage /'kæbɪdʒ/ *noun*
cereal /'sɪəriəl/ *noun*
cheese /tʃi:z/ *noun*
cucumber /'kju:kʌmbər/ *noun*
fish /fɪʃ/ *noun*
fruit /fru:t/ *noun*
honey /'hʌni/ *noun*
hot chocolate /hɒt 'tʃɒkələt/ *noun*
jam /dʒæm/ *noun*
mango /'mæŋɡəʊ/ *noun*
pasta /'pæstə/ *noun*
rice /raɪs/ *noun*
toast /təʊst/ *noun*
vegetables /'vedʒtəbəlz/ *noun*
yoghurt /'jɒɡət/ *noun*

UNIT 3

MUSIC

classical music /'klæsɪkəl 'mju:zɪk/ *noun*

drums /dɪʌmz/ *noun*

electric guitar /ɪ'lektɪk grɪ'tɑ:r/ *noun*

hip-hop /'hɪphɒp/ *noun*

jazz /dʒæz/ *noun*

keyboard /'ki:bɔ:d/ *noun*

opera /'ɒpərə/ *noun*

piano /pɪ'ænəʊ/ *noun*

pop /pɒp/ *noun*

rap /ræp/ *noun*

rock /rɒk/ *adjective/noun*

saxophone /'sæksəfəʊn/ *noun*

soul /səʊl/ *adjective/noun*

violin /ˌvaɪə'lɪn/ *noun*

MUSIC PHRASES

become a singer /bɪ'kʌm ə 'sɪŋər/ *verb phrase*

become famous /bɪ'kʌm 'feɪməs/ *verb phrase*

give a concert /gɪv ə 'kɒnsət/ *verb phrase*

go on tour /gəʊ ɒn tuər/ *verb phrase*

make a music video /rɪ'kɔ:d ə 'mju:zɪk 'vɪdiəʊ/ *verb phrase*

play in a band /pleɪ ɪn ə bænd/ *verb phrase*

record an album /rɪ'kɔ:d ən 'ælbəm/ *verb phrase*

teach music /ti:tʃ 'mju:zɪk/ *verb phrase*

UNIT 4

ADJECTIVES

amazing /ə'meɪzɪŋ/ *adjective*

awesome /'ɔ:səm/ *adjective*

brilliant /'brɪliənt/ *adjective*

fantastic /fæn'tæstɪk/ *adjective*

fine /faɪn/ *adjective*

great /greɪt/ *adjective*

horrible /'hɒrəbl/ *adjective*

lovely /'lʌvli/ *adjective*

OK /əʊ'keɪ/ *adjective*

perfect /'pɜ:fɪkt/ *adjective*

really good /rɪəli gʊd/ *adjective*

terrible /'terəbl/ *adjective*

wonderful /'wʌndəfəl/ *adjective*

EMOTIONS

afraid /ə'freɪd/ *adjective*

angry /'æŋɡri/ *adjective*

glad /glæd/ *adjective*

happy /'hæpi/ *adjective*

interested /'ɪntrəstɪd/ *adjective*

nervous /'nɜ:vəs/ *adjective*

sorry /'sɒri/ *adjective*

surprised /sə'praɪzd/ *adjective*

upset /ʌp'set/ *adjective*

worried /'wʌrɪd/ *adjective*

UNIT 5

HISTORICAL EVENTS

climb /klaɪm/ *verb*

cross /krɒs/ *verb*

die /daɪ/ *verb*

open /'əʊpən/ *verb*

paint /'peɪnt/ *verb*

play /pleɪ/ *verb*

publish /'pʌblɪʃ/ *verb*

receive /rɪ'si:v/ *verb*

record /rɪ'kɔ:d/ *verb*

travel /'trævəl/ *verb*

BUILDINGS

castle /'kɑ:sl/ *noun*

cathedral /kə'θi:drəl/ *noun*

ceiling /'si:lɪŋ/ *noun*

church /tʃɜ:tʃ/ *noun*

floor /flɔ:r/ *noun*

palace /'pælɪs/ *noun*

roof /ru:f/ *noun*

square /skweə/ *noun*

stairs /steəz/ *noun*

statue /'stætʃu:/ *noun*

UNIT 6

JOBS

actor /'æktə/ *noun*

artist /'ɑ:tɪst/ *noun*

cook /kʊk/ *noun*

dentist /'dentɪst/ *noun*

engineer /,endʒɪ'nɪə/ *noun*

factory worker /'fæktəri wɜ:kə/ *noun*

farmer /'fɑ:mə/ *noun*

manager /'mænɪdʒə/ *noun*

mechanic /mɪ'kænɪk/ *noun*

model /'mɒdəl/ *noun*

nurse /nɜ:s/ *noun*

photographer /fə'tɒgrəfə/ *noun*

pilot /'paɪlət/ *noun*

police officer /pə'li:s 'ɒfɪsə/ *noun*

shop assistant /ʃɒp ə'sɪstənt/ *noun*

sports coach /spɔ:ts kəʊtʃ/ *noun*

WORK

boss /bɒs/ *noun*

busy /'bɪzi/ *adjective*

customers /'kʌstəməz/ *noun*

earn /ɜ:n/ *verb*

office /'ɒfɪs/ *noun*

staff /stɑ:f/ *noun*



VOCABULARY LIST

UNIT 7

HOLIDAY ACTIVITIES

- buy presents /baɪ 'prezənts/ *verb phrase*
do water sports /du 'wɔ:tə ,spɔ:ts/ *verb phrase*
go camping /gəʊ 'kæmpɪŋ/ *verb phrase*
go sightseeing /gəʊ 'saɪtsi:ɪŋ/ *verb phrase*
go to the beach /gəʊ tə ðə bi:tʃ/ *verb phrase*
lie on the beach /laɪ ɒn ðə bi:tʃ/ *verb phrase*
ride a bike /raɪd ə baɪk/ *verb phrase*
stay at a hotel /steɪ ət ə həʊ'tel/ *verb phrase*
take photos /teɪk 'fəʊtəʊz/ *verb phrase*

HOLIDAYS

- airport /'eəpɔ:t/ *noun*
coach /kəʊtʃ/ *noun*
ferry /'feri/ *noun*
flight /flaɪt/ *noun*
guidebook /'gaɪdbʊk/ *noun*
map /mæp/ *noun*
passport /'pɑ:spɔ:t/ *noun*
station /'steɪʃən/ *noun*
suitcase /'su:tkeɪs/ *noun*
ticket /'tɪkt/ *noun*
tour guide /tʊə gaɪd/ *noun*
tourist /'tʊərɪst/ *noun*

UNIT 8

BEDROOM FURNITURE

- armchair /'ɑ:m,tʃeə/ *noun*
blanket /'blæŋkɪt/ *noun*
bookshelf /'bʊkʃelf/ *noun*
carpet /'kɑ:pɪt/ *noun*
chest of drawers /tʃest əv drɔ:z/ *noun*
cupboard /'kʌbəd/ *noun*
curtains /'kɜ:tənz/ *noun*
cushion /'kʊʃən/ *noun*
lamp /læmp/ *noun*
mirror /'mɪrə/ *noun*
photographs /'fəʊtəgrɑ:fs/ *noun*

FREE-TIME ACTIVITIES

- draw pictures /drɔ: 'pɪktʃəz/ *verb phrase*
listen to music /'lɪsən tə 'mju:zɪk/ *verb phrase*
listen to songs /'lɪsən tə sɒŋz/ *verb phrase*
paint pictures /peɪnt 'pɪktʃəz/ *verb phrase*
play computer games /pleɪ kəm'pjʊ:tə geɪmz/ *verb phrase*
play the drums /pleɪ ðə drʌmz/ *verb phrase*
play the guitar /pleɪ ðə ɡɪ'tɑ:/ *verb phrase*
play music /pleɪ 'mju:zɪk/ *verb phrase*
read a blog /ri:d ə blɒg/ *verb phrase*
read magazines /ri:d ,mægə'zi:nz/ *verb phrase*
read stories /ri:d 'stɔ:rɪz/ *verb phrase*
write a blog /raɪt ə blɒg/ *verb phrase*
write a diary /raɪt ə 'daɪəri/ *verb phrase*
write music /raɪt 'mju:zɪk/ *verb phrase*
write songs /raɪt sɒŋz/ *verb phrase*
write stories /raɪt 'stɔ:rɪz/ *verb phrase*

UNIT 9

CLOTHES

boots /bu:ts/ *noun*

cap /kæp/ *noun*

gloves /glʌvz/ *noun*

jumper /'dʒʌmpə/ *noun*

scarf /skɑ:f/ *noun*

socks /sɒks/ *noun*

suit /su:t/ *noun*

sunglasses /'sʌŋɡlə:sɪz/ *noun*

swimming costume /swɪmɪŋ kɒs.tʃu:m/ *noun*

swimming shorts /swɪmɪŋ ʃɔ:ts/ *noun*

tie /taɪ/ *noun*

trainers /'treɪnəz/ *noun*

MATERIALS

cork /kɔ:k/ *noun*

cotton /'kɒtən/ *noun*

leather /'leðə/ *noun*

metal /'metəl/ *noun*

plastic /'plæstɪk/ *noun*

wool /wʊl/ *noun*

UNIT 10

BUYING AND SELLING

bill /bɪl/ *noun*

cash /kæʃ/ *noun*

discount /'dɪskaʊnt/ *noun*

price /praɪs/ *noun*

purse /pɜ:s/ *noun*

receipt /rɪ'si:t/ *noun*

sale /seɪl/ *noun*

wallet /'wɒlɪt/ *noun*

PHRASES WITH **FOR**

I sold my old games console **for** 50 euros.

I bought these new shoes **for** the party.

We need to have our project finished **for** next Wednesday.

Spain is famous **for** its food and climate.

'Sneakers' is the American English word **for** 'trainers'.

UNIT 11

FOOD

- burger /'bɜːgə/ *noun*
- chicken legs /'tʃɪkɪn legz/ *noun*
- chili /'tʃɪli/ *noun*
- chips /tʃɪps/ *noun*
- cola /'kəʊlə/ *noun*
- cream /kriːm/ *noun*
- curry /'kʌri/ *noun*
- fresh vegetables /fref 'vedʒtəblz/ *noun*
- fried onions /fraɪd 'ʌnjənz/ *noun*
- grapes /greɪps/ *noun*
- grilled meat /grɪld mi:t/ *noun*
- lemonade /,lemə'neɪd/ *noun*
- mineral water /'mɪnərəl 'wɔːtər/ *noun*
- noodles /'nuːdəlz/ *noun*
- omelette /'ɒmlət/ *noun*
- pancakes /'pæŋkeɪks/ *noun*
- pasta with tomato sauce /'pɑːstə wɪð tə'mɑːtəʊ sɔːs/ *noun*
- mushroom /'mʌʃruːm/ *noun*
- salad /'sæləd/ *noun*
- seafood /'siːfuːd/ *noun*
- soft drinks /sɒft drɪŋks/ *noun*
- strawberry /'strɔːbəri/ *noun*
- sweets /swiːts/ *noun*

UNIT 12

TECHNOLOGY

- e-reader /'iːriːdə/ *noun*
- fitness tracker /'fɪt.nəs ˌtrækə/ *noun*
- games console /'geɪmz ˌkɒnsəʊl/ *noun*
- headphones /'hedfəʊnz/ *noun*
- keyboard /'kiːbɔːd/ *noun*
- laptop /'læptɒp/ *noun*
- mouse /maʊs/ *noun*
- play games /pleɪ 'geɪmz/ *verb phrase*
- printer /'prɪntə/ *noun*
- screen /skriːn/ *noun*
- smartphone /'smɑːtfəʊn/ *noun*
- speaker /'spiːkə/ *noun*
- tablet /'tæblət/ *noun*

COMPUTERS AND THE INTERNET

- buy clothes /baɪ kləʊðz/ *verb phrase*
- chat online /tʃæt 'ɒn.laɪn/ *verb phrase*
- chat (to) friends /tʃæt tə frendz/ *verb phrase*
- digital /'dɪdʒɪtəl/ *adjective*
- download /ˌdaʊn'ləʊd/ *verb*
- download music /ˌdaʊn'ləʊd 'mjuːzɪk/ *verb phrase*
- download videos /ˌdaʊn'ləʊd 'vɪdɪəʊz/ *verb phrase*
- go online /gəʊ 'ɒn.laɪn/ *verb phrase*
- machine /mə'ʃiːn/ *noun*
- memory /'meməri/ *noun*
- save /seɪv/ *verb*
- software /'sɒftweə/ *noun*
- surf the internet /sɜːf ði 'ɪntənət/ *verb phrase*
- virus /'vaɪərəs/ *noun*
- visit websites /'vɪzɪt 'websaɪts/ *verb phrase*
- watch videos /wɒtʃ 'vɪdɪəʊz/ *verb phrase*

UNIT 13

ILLNESS

broken arm /'brəʊkən a:m/ *noun*

cold /kəʊld/ *noun*

a headache /ə 'hedeɪk/ *noun*

hurt /hɜ:t/ *verb*

hurts /hɜ:ts/ *verb*

a pain /ə peɪn/ *noun*

sick /sɪk/ *adjective*

stomach ache /'stʌmək eɪk/ *noun*

a temperature /ə 'temprətʃə/ *noun*

toothache /'tu:θeɪk/ *noun*

HEALTH

do a race /du: ə reɪs/ *verb phrase*

do some exercise /du: səm 'eksəsaɪz/ *verb phrase*

do some exercises in a gym /du: səm 'eksəsaɪzɪz
ɪn ə dʒɪm/ *verb phrase*

eat well /i:t wel/ *verb phrase*

enter a race /'entər ə reɪs/ *verb phrase*

feel healthy /fi:l 'helθi/ *verb phrase*

get fit /get fɪt/ *verb phrase*

get some exercise /get səm 'eksəsaɪz/ *verb phrase*

have a rest /hæv ə rest/ *verb phrase*

keep fit /ki:p fɪt/ *verb phrase*

sleep well /sli:p wel/ *verb phrase*

stay healthy /steɪ 'helθi/ *verb phrase*

take a rest /teɪk ə rest/ *verb phrase*

try some exercises in a gym /traɪ səm 'eksəsaɪzɪz
ɪn ə dʒɪm/ *verb phrase*

UNIT 14

PLACES IN A TOWN

bank /bæŋk/ *noun*

bridge /brɪdʒ/ *noun*

bus station /'bʌs ,steɪʃn/ *noun*

bus stop /'bʌs stɒp/ *noun*

café /'kæfeɪ/ *noun*

car park /'kɑ: pɑ:k/ *noun*

cinema /'sɪnəmə/ *noun*

hospital /'hɒspɪtəl/ *noun*

hotel /həʊ'tel/ *noun*

library /'laɪbrəri/ *noun*

market /'mɑ:kɪt/ *noun*

museum /mju:'zi:əm/ *noun*

petrol station /'pet.rəl ,steɪʃən/ *noun*

police station /pə'li:s ,steɪʃən/ *noun*

post office /'pəʊst ,ɒfɪs/ *noun*

playground /'pleɪgraʊnd/ *noun*

restaurant /'restərɒnt/ *noun*

roundabout /'raʊndəbaʊt/ *noun*

shop /ʃɒp/ *noun*

sports centre /'spɔ:ts ,sentə/ *noun*

train station /'treɪn ,steɪʃən/ *noun*

supermarket /'su:pəmə:kɪt/ *noun*

swimming pool /'swɪm.ɪŋ ,pu:l/ *noun*

street /stri:t/ *noun*

theatre /'θɪətə/ *noun*

traffic lights /'træfɪk laɪts/ *noun*

university /ju:nɪ'vɜ:səti/ *noun*

COMPOUND NOUNS

cycle tour /'saɪkl tuə/ *noun*

guidebook /'gaɪdbʊk/ *noun*

postcard /'pəʊstkɑ:d/ *noun*

raincoat /'reɪnkəʊt/ *noun*

tour guide /tuə gaɪd/ *noun*

walking tour /'wɔ:kɪŋ tuə/ *noun*



VOCABULARY LIST

UNIT 15

GEOGRAPHICAL FEATURES

- cliff /klɪf/ *noun*
deep /di:p/ *adjective*
field /fi:ld/ *noun*
high /haɪ/ *adjective*
island /'aɪlənd/ *noun*
lake /leɪk/ *noun*
long /lɒŋ/ *adjective*
mountain /'maʊntɪn/ *noun*
river /'rɪvə/ *noun*
snow /snəʊ/ *noun*
water /'wɔ:tə/ *noun*
wide /waɪd/ *adjective*

THE WEATHER

- cloudy /'klaʊdi/ *adjective*
foggy /'fɒgi/ *adjective*
icy /'aɪsi/ *adjective*
rainy /'reɪni/ *adjective*
snowy /'snəʊi/ *adjective*
sunny /'sʌni/ *adjective*
windy /'wɪndi/ *adjective*

UNIT 16

ANIMALS

- bear /beə/ *noun*
chicken /'tʃɪkɪn/ *noun*
duck /dʌk/ *noun*
elephant /'elɪfənt/ *noun*
insect /'ɪnsekt/ *noun*
lion /laɪən/ *noun*
monkey /'mʌŋki/ *noun*
mouse /maʊs/ *noun*
rabbit /'ræbɪt/ *noun*
rat /ræt/ *noun*

PHRASAL VERBS

- get off /get ɒf/ *phrasal verb*
get on /get ɒn/ *phrasal verb*
look after /lʊk 'ɑ:ftə/ *phrasal verb*
pick up /pɪk ʌp/ *phrasal verb*
turn off /tɜ:n ɒf/ *phrasal verb*
turn on /tɜ:n ɒn/ *phrasal verb*

UNIT 17

TELEVISION

cartoon /kɑ:'tu:n/ *noun*

channels /'tʃænəlz/ *noun*

fan /fæn/ *noun*

live /laɪv/ *adjective*

the news /ðə nju:z/ *noun*

on demand /ɒn dɪ'mɑ:nd/ *adverb*

on TV /ɒn ,ti:'vi:/ *adverb*

programme /'prəʊgræm/ *noun*

record /rɪ'kɔ:d/ *verb*

remote control /rɪ'məʊt kən'trəʊl/ *noun*

stream /stri:m/ *noun*

ENTERTAINMENT

audience /'ɔ:diəns/ *noun*

competitions /,kɒmpə'tɪʃənz/ *noun*

the final /ðə 'faɪnəl/ *noun*

judges /dʒʌdʒɪz/ *noun*

performers /pə'fɔ:məz/ *noun*

prize /praɪz/ *noun*

runner-up /,rʌnər'ʌp/ *noun*

stage /steɪdʒ/ *noun*

star /stɑ:r/ *noun*

studio /'stju:diəʊ/ *noun*

talent show /'tælənt ʃəʊ/ *noun*

vote for /vəʊt fə/ *verb phrase*

winner /'wɪnə/ *noun*

UNIT 18

MAGAZINES

advertisement /əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt/ *noun*

article /'ɑ:tɪkl/ *noun*

cartoon /kɑ:'tu:n/ *noun*

headline /'hedlaɪn/ *noun*

information /,ɪnfə'meɪʃən/ *noun*

interview /'ɪntəvjʊ:/ *noun*

photograph /'fəʊtəgrɑ:f/ *noun*

review /rɪ'vju:/ *noun*

AS, BECAUSE, SO AND WHEN

I don't like talent shows **because** they are boring.

My parents love watching Britain's Got Talent **as** it's so much fun.

When they said Chris was the winner of *Star Voice*, I was surprised.

I didn't have time to read the book, **so** I watched the film instead.

UNIT 19

TRIP ACTIVITIES

canoeing /kə'nuɪŋ/ *noun*

cooking on a fire /'kʊkɪŋ ɒn ə faɪə/ *verb phrase*

dancing at a disco /dɑːnsɪŋ ət ə 'dɪskəʊ/ *verb phrase*

going on a nature walk /'gəʊɪŋ ɒn ə 'neɪtʃə wɔːk/ *verb phrase*

going round a museum /'gəʊɪŋ raʊnd ə mjuː'ziːəm/ *verb phrase*

going to an amusement park /'gəʊɪŋ tə ən ə'mjuːzmənt paːk/ *verb phrase*

sailing /'seɪlɪŋ/ *noun*

visiting a farm /'vɪzɪtɪŋ ə faːm/ *verb phrase*

visiting an aquarium /'vɪzɪtɪŋ ən ə'kwɛəriəm/ *verb phrase*

watching a show /wɒtʃɪŋ ə ʃəʊ/ *verb phrase*

SCHOOL COLLOCATIONS

do an exercise /duː ən 'eksəsaɪz/ *verb phrase*

do a project /duː ə 'prɒdʒekt/ *verb phrase*

do a test /duː ə test/ *verb phrase*

do homework /duː 'həʊmwɜːk/ *verb phrase*

fail a test /feɪl ə test/ *verb phrase*

get marks /get mɑːks/ *verb phrase*

give a lesson /ɡɪv ə 'lesən/ *verb phrase*

pass a test /pɑːs ə test/ *verb phrase*

study from a textbook /'stʌdi frəm ə 'tekstbʊk/ *verb phrase*

take notes /teɪk nəʊts/ *verb phrase*

UNIT 20

FAMILY

aunt /ɑːnt/ *noun*

beautiful /'bjʊːtɪfəl/ *adjective*

blonde /blɒnd/ *adjective*

cousin /'kʌzən/ *noun*

dark /dɑːk/ *adjective*

fair /feə/ *adjective*

good-looking /ɡʊd'lʊkɪŋ/ *adjective*

grandchild /'grændtʃaɪld/ *noun*

granddaughter /'grændˌdɔːtə/ *noun*

grandfather /'grændˌfɑːðə/ *noun*

grandmother /'grændˌmʌðə/ *noun*

grandparent /'grændˌpeərənt/ *noun*

grandson /'grændsən/ *noun*

nephew /'nefjuː/ *noun*

niece /niːs/ *noun*

old /əʊld/ *adjective*

pretty /'prɪti/ *adjective*

short /ʃɔːt/ *adjective*

slim /slɪm/ *adjective*

tall /tɔːl/ *adjective*

uncle /'ʌŋkl/ *noun*

young /jʌŋ/ *adjective*

ADVERBS OF DEGREE

certainly /'sɜːtənli/ *adverb*

nearly /'niəli/ *adverb*

probably /'prɒbəbli/ *adverb*

quite /kwaɪt/ *adverb*

really /'riəli/ *adverb*

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE

STARTER UNIT

BE

Positive	Negative
I'm (am) you/we/they're (are) he/she/it's (is)	I'm (am) not you/we/they aren't (are not) he/she/it isn't (is not)
Questions	Short answers
Am I ...? Are you/we/they ...? Is he/she/it ...?	Yes, I am. No, I'm not. Yes, you/we/they are. No, you/we/they aren't. Yes, he/she/it is. No, he/she/it isn't.

- We use **be** for people and things to describe them, say how old they are and where they are.
I'm John. I'm tall. I'm 14. I'm in the classroom. My bag is under my desk. It's blue and white.

THERE IS / THERE ARE

	Singular	Plural
Positive	there's	there are
Negative	there isn't	there aren't
Questions	Is there ...?	Are there ...?
Short answers	Yes, there is. No, there isn't.	Yes, there are. No, there aren't.

- We use **there is / there are** to say that something exists (or doesn't exist).
There's a rubber in my pencil case, but there aren't any pencils.
- We use **there is** with singular and uncountable nouns.
Is there a window near your desk? There's water on the table.
- We use **there are** with plural countable nouns.
Are there any pens on the table? Yes, there are.

Practice

- 1** Complete the questions with *Is there* or *Are there*. Then write answers.

- 0 *Are there* any shelves in your classroom? (✓)
Yes, there are.
- 1 _____ a green pencil on the floor? (✓) _____
- 2 _____ any maps on the walls? (X) _____
- 3 _____ any cinemas in your town? (✓) _____

HAVE GOT

Positive
I/you/we/they've (have) got he/she/it's (has) got
Negative
I/you/we/they haven't (have not) got he/she/it hasn't (has not) got
Questions
Have I/you/we/they got ...? Has he/she/it got ...?
Short answers
Yes, I/you/we/they have. No, I/you/we/they haven't. Yes, he/she/it has. No, he/she/it hasn't.

- We use **have got** to talk about our family, our hair or eyes and our possessions.
*I've got a brother. He's got blue eyes.
My sister's got a new phone. It's great!*

Practice

- 2** Complete the sentences with the correct form of *have got*.

- 0 *I've got* a new green bike.
- 1 My friends _____ (X) pets at home.
- 2 We _____ a new English teacher. (✓)
- 3 My dad _____ (X) a car. He _____ a bike.
- 4 _____ you _____ a computer? 'Yes, I _____.'

CAN

Positive	I/you/he/she/it/we/they can
Negative	I/you/he/she/it/we/they can't (cannot)
Questions	Can I/you/he/she/it/we/they ...?
Short answers	Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/they can. No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they can't.

- We use **can** to talk about ability.
I can play football, but I can't play tennis.

Practice

- 3** Write four sentences about the things you *can* and *can't* do.

I can't speak French, but I can speak English.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE

PRESENT SIMPLE

Positive	I/You/We/They play volleyball. He/She/It goes running.
Negative	I/You/We/They don't paint pictures. He/She/It doesn't write poems.
Questions	Do I/you/we/they sit near the window? Does he/she/it live near here?
Short answers	Yes, I/you/we/they do . No, I/you/we/they don't . Yes, he/she/it does . No, he/she/it doesn't .

We use the **present simple** to talk about things we do often or every day.

I play football after school every day.

He doesn't go skating in the summer.

UNIT 1 ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

- We use the present simple to talk about things we do often or every day.

100% I **always** play table tennis in the summer.
 I **usually** go sailing with my dad.
 I **often** do athletics with my friends.
 I'm **sometimes** late for school.
 0% I'm **never** unhappy.

- We use the present simple with **adverbs of frequency** to say **how often** we do things.
How often do you go snowboarding?
We sometimes go snowboarding in the winter.
- With the verb **be**, we put the adverb after the verb and before the adjective.
Are you sometimes tired after school?
Yes, I'm often tired. / No, I'm not often tired.
- With other verbs in the present simple, we put the adverb before the main verb.
Do you often play hockey at school?
Yes, I often play hockey. / No, I don't often play hockey.
- Remember, we use **never** with positive verbs.
I never go snowboarding. (not I don't never go...)

Practice

- 1** Complete the sentences with the present simple form of the verbs in the box.

go	not go	not play
play	study	watch

- I _____ basketball in a team.
- My teacher _____ sailing when the weather is bad.
- My brother _____ TV after dinner every day.
- _____ your mum _____ running before work?
- My friends and I _____ rugby at the weekend. We prefer football.
- My best friend always _____ hard before an exam.

- 2** Rewrite the sentences with the adverb of frequency in brackets in the correct place.

0 I'm late for school. (always)
I'm always late for school.

1 We play badminton. (never)

2 My dad doesn't go running. (often)

3 My friends and I go cycling. (sometimes)

4 We aren't bored in our sports lesson. (usually)

5 Are you tired in the morning? (often)

- 3** Put the words in order to make questions. Then write answers that are true for you.

0 play / you / table tennis / how often / do / ?
How often do you play table tennis?
I sometimes play table tennis.

1 you and your friends / go / often / sailing / do / ?

2 you / sometimes / bored / are / at home / ?

3 dinner / how often / cook / you / do / ?

4 your best friend / how often / watch / does / TV / ?

5 sometimes / do / you / go / alone / running / ?

UNIT 2

PRESENT CONTINUOUS AND PRESENT SIMPLE

SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, STARTER, PRESENT SIMPLE PAGE 138

Present continuous

Positive	I'm (am) waking up. You/We/They're (are) getting dressed. He/She/It's (is) eating breakfast.
Negative	I'm (am) not brushing my hair. You/We/They aren't (are not) going to school. (or You/We/They're not going to school.) He/She/It isn't (is not) helping. (or He/She/ It's not helping.)
Questions	Am I eating lunch? Are you/we/they making breakfast? Is he/she/it drinking hot chocolate?
Short answers	Yes, I am. No, I'm not. Yes, you/we/they are. No, you/we/they aren't. (or you/we/they're not.) Yes, he/she/it is. No, he/she/it isn't. (or he/she/it's not.)

SPELLING: -ING FORM

Present continuous

most verbs add -ing	go → going brush → brushing eat → eating
verbs ending in -e: remove -e and add -ing	wake → waking have → having
verbs ending in -ie: change the -ie to -y and add -ing	lie → lying
one-syllable verbs ending in a consonant + a vowel + a consonant (except w, x or y): double the consonant and add -ing	get dressed → getting dressed shop → shopping
two-syllable verbs ending in a stressed vowel + a consonant: double the consonant and add -ing	begin → beginning (but open → opening)
In British English, we double the final l in travel.	travel → travelling (American English: travel → traveling)

We use:

- the **present simple** to talk about things we do often or every day. We often use it with frequency adverbs such as *often, usually always and never*.
We often eat salad in the summer.
- the **present continuous** to talk about things we're doing now or at the moment. We often use it with words such as *now, at the moment and today*.
I'm preparing my school bag at the moment.

Practice

1 Write complete sentences in the present continuous.

- My brother / make sandwiches at the moment.
My brother's making sandwiches at the moment.
- We / serve dinner now.
- I / not going to school this morning.
- What / you make?
- My friends / not go cycling at the moment.
- your best friend / sit next to you?

2 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- We *never eat* / *'re never eating* dinner at a restaurant.
- I *go* / *'m going* swimming after school every day.
- Shh! My baby brother *sleeps* / *'s sleeping* at the moment.
- What *do you usually have* / *are you usually having* for breakfast?
- Are you *watch* / *watching* TV now? No, I'm not / *it isn't*.
- My mum *doesn't work* / *isn't working* today. She's on holiday.
- We *always go* / *are always going* to school by bus.

3 Complete the sentences so they are true for you.

- For breakfast, I often _____.
- My friends and I sometimes _____ after school.
- At the moment, my best friend _____.
- I'm _____ and shoes today.
- On Friday afternoon, I usually _____.
- I _____ now.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE

UNIT 3

LIKE, DON'T LIKE, HATE, LOVE + -ING

After *like*, *don't like*, *hate* and *love*, we use the *-ing* form.

My sister loves listening to rap.

😊 *I really love playing the drums.*

↑ *I love listening to the piano.*

↑ *I like listening to rock music.*

↑ *I quite like playing the guitar.*

↓ *I don't like listening to jazz.*

😞 *I hate listening to the violin.*

• We use *like*, *don't like*, *hate* and *love* to talk about the things we like or don't like doing.

I love playing the piano.

My friends don't like going to concerts.

• We can use *really* to say how much we like, love or hate doing things.

We also can use *quite* with *like*.

I really love listening to music, but I really hate listening to rap.

I quite like playing the keyboard. (not I quite love or I quite hate)

➤ SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 2, SPELLING: *-ING* FORM, PAGE 139

Practice

1 Complete the table. Tick (✓) the correct rules and write the *-ing* form of the verbs in the last column.

verb	only add <i>-ing</i>	remove <i>-e</i> and add <i>-ing</i>	double the consonant and add <i>-ing</i>	<i>-ing</i> form
dance		✓		dancing
get up				
have				
make				
open				
play				
shop				
sit				
swim				
watch				

2 Complete the sentences with the *-ing* form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 My sister really loves _____ (play) the guitar.
- 2 My grandparents like _____ (live) in a big city.
- 3 My dad loves _____ (drive).
- 4 I quite like _____ (go) snowboarding with my family.
- 5 My friends and I hate _____ (wear) a school uniform.
- 6 We don't like _____ (get up) early.

3 Write sentences that are true for you with *like*, *don't like*, *hate*, *love* and the words in brackets.

- 1 (go cycling) *I really love going cycling with my friends.*
- 2 (listen to rock music) _____.
- 3 (study for exams) _____.
- 4 (have pizza for dinner) _____.
- 5 (swim in the sea) _____.

UNIT 4

PAST SIMPLE OF BE

Positive	I/He/She/It was at home yesterday. You/We/They were at school at ten o'clock.
Negative	I/He/She/It wasn't (was not) five years old in 2010. You/We/They weren't in the park yesterday.
Questions	Where was I/he/she/it at six o'clock? Who were you/we/they with yesterday? Was I/he/she/it late? Were you/we/they happy?
Short answers	Yes, I/he/she/it was . No, I/he/she/it wasn't (was not) . Yes, you/we/they were . No, you/we/they weren't (were not) .

Was/were are the past forms of **be**. We use **was/were** to describe people and things in the past.

*My grandmother **was** tall and she **was** very beautiful.*

*The earrings **were** fantastic. They **were** round.*

We also use **was/were** or **were/weren't** to say where people or things were or weren't in the past.

*We **weren't** at school yesterday. It **was** a holiday.*

*The new T-shirt **wasn't** in her bedroom.*

We start sentences with **was/weren't** to make questions.

***Was** it a good party? **Weren't** your friends with you?*

We can use **was/weren't** in short answers without the noun.

*Yes, it **was**. No, they **weren't**.*

Practice

1 Complete the sentences with **was(n't)** or **were(n't)**.

- 0 I was very surprised.
- 1 My friends _____ interested in my new phone.
- 2 My dad _____ (not) in the office at 11 o'clock.
- 3 We _____ (not) happy. Our dog _____ missing.
- 4 You _____ very tired yesterday.
- 5 I _____ (not) hungry, but I _____ very thirsty.

2 Put the words in order to make questions. Then write the short answer.

- 0 bored / you / were / ? (✓)
Were you bored? Yes, I was.
- 1 your / tall / teacher / was / first / ? (✓)

- 2 shoes / were / his / broken / ? (✓)

- 3 you / and / friends / your / cold / were / ? (X)

- 4 mobile / bag / was / in / your / your / ? (X)

- 5 lake / were / the / we / near / ? (✓)

3 Write complete questions with **was** or **were**. Then write answers that are true for you.

- 0 Where / you / yesterday / at 6 pm?
Where were you yesterday at 6 pm? I was at home.
- 1 you / late / for school on Monday?

- 2 your friends / tired / at 9 am this morning?

- 3 When / your best friend / born?

- 4 What day / it / yesterday?

- 5 this exercise / difficult?

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE

UNIT 5

PAST SIMPLE: REGULAR VERBS

I/You/He/She/It/We/They **climbed** a mountain.

I/You/He/She/It/We/They **recorded** an album.

- We use the past simple to talk about things that happened in the past.
*Leonardo da Vinci **Painted** the Mona Lisa. We visited The Prado Museum in Madrid.*
- With regular verbs, the past simple verb ends in **-ed**. (See Spelling below.)
climb → climbed, change → changed, carry → carried

Spelling: regular verbs

most verbs: add -ed	<i>play → played</i>
verbs that end in -e : add -d	<i>change → changed</i>
verbs that end in consonant + -y : change -y to -i and add -ed	<i>carry → carried</i>
one-syllable verbs ending in a consonant + a vowel + a consonant (except w, x or y): double the consonant and add -ed	<i>stop → stopped</i>
two-syllable verbs ending in a stressed vowel + a consonant: double the final consonant and add -ed	<i>prefer → preferred</i>
In British English, we double the final l .	<i>travel → travelled</i> (American English: <i>travel → traveled</i>)

Practice

- 1** Complete the table with the past simple form of the verbs in the box.

cross die enjoy plan practise
shop stay study try walk

climb → climbed	change → changed	carry → carried	play → played	stop → stopped
<i>crossed</i>				

- 2** Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in the box.

climb finish listen
play try watch

- My friends _____ football yesterday.
- I _____ TV last night.
- We _____ to music in class.
- My mum _____ a mountain at the weekend.
- My family _____ Chinese food last week.
- I _____ my homework quickly.

UNIT 6

PAST SIMPLE: NEGATIVES AND QUESTIONS

SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 5, PAST SIMPLE: REGULAR VERBS, PAGE 142

Negative	I/You/He/She/It/We/They didn't (did not) finish.
Questions	Where did I/you/he/she/it/we/they cook? Did I/you/he/she/it/we/they work in a shop?
Short answers	Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/they did . No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they didn't .

- We use the **past simple negative** to talk about things that didn't happen in the past.
*The café **didn't** open at eight o'clock.*
*We **didn't** watch a film in class.*
- We use **past simple questions** to ask about things that happened in the past.
*What time **did** he finish work?*
***Did** you listen to music last night?*
- We use **short answers** to answer simple Yes / No questions.
*Yes, I **did**.*

Practice

1 Complete the sentences with the past simple negative form of the underlined verbs.

- My dad played tennis. He didn't play volleyball.
- We cooked fish. We _____ meat.
- In the school holidays, my brother worked in a factory. He _____ in a shop.
- I used my mobile to send a message. I _____ the computer.
- My friends climbed a tree. They _____ a mountain.
- I opened the window. I _____ the door.

2 Write true sentences about what you and the people you know didn't do yesterday. Use the words in brackets and the past simple negative form of the verbs.

- (I / watch)
*I **didn't** watch a film on TV yesterday.*
- (my mum / listen)
- (my classmates / walk)
- (I / study)
- (my friends and I / play)
- (this class / start)

3 Write complete questions in the past simple. Then write short answers.

- Did you cook dinner yesterday?
No, *I **didn't**.*
- _____ your sister _____ (help) you with your homework?
Yes, _____.
- _____ your friends _____ (finish) all the biscuits?
Yes, _____.
- _____ this class _____ (start) at 10 am?
No, _____.
- _____ you _____ (enjoy) the party?
Yes, _____.
- _____ it _____ (rain) yesterday?
No, _____.

4 Put the words in order to make questions. Then write answers that are true for you.

- you / walk / this / did / school / to / morning / ?
***Did** you walk to school this morning?*
*Yes, I **did**.*
- start / what / you / did / time / school / ?
- use / did / a / you / computer / last night / ?
- study / yesterday / you / did / what / ?
- visit / country / holiday / you / did / another / on / ?
- when / you / finish / Unit 5 / did / ?

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE

UNIT 7

PAST SIMPLE: IRREGULAR VERBS

➤ SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 5, PAST SIMPLE: REGULAR VERBS, PAGE 142

➤ SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 6, PAST SIMPLE: QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVES, PAGE 143

Positive	I/You/He/She/It/We/They swam in the sea every day.
Negative	I/You/He/She/It/We/They didn't go to Italy on holiday.
Questions	What did I/you/he/she/it/we/they eat? Did I/you/he/she/it/we/they have a good time?
Short answers	Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/they did. No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they didn't.

- Remember, we use the **past simple** to talk about things that happened or didn't happen in the past.
- With regular verbs, the past simple verb ends in **-ed**.
want → *wanted*, *decide* → *decided*, *travel* → *travelled*
- With irregular verbs, the past simple doesn't end in **-ed**. (See irregular verb list page 158)
buy → *bought*, *come* → *came*, *take* → *took*

Practice

1 Complete the table with the missing words.

Infinitive	Past simple	Infinitive	Past simple
eat	⁰ <i>ate</i>	arrive	⁶ _____
¹ _____	went	⁷ _____	carried
ride	² _____	enjoy	⁸ _____
³ _____	saw	⁹ _____	lived
swim	⁴ _____	stop	¹⁰ _____
⁵ _____	took	¹¹ _____	watched

2 Read the sentences and underline the irregular past simple form of the verbs. Then write the infinitive of the verbs.

- I swam in the sea every day. *swim*
- We went sightseeing in the morning.
- We had a great time on holiday.
- I rode an elephant in India.
- My friends ate pizza last night.
- My parents bought me a present.

3 Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in the box.

buy can get up
give ride see

- Our teacher _____ us a lot of homework.
- We _____ our bikes to the beach.
- I _____ a ticket at the station.
- My dad _____ at six o'clock this morning.
- I _____ my best friend with her mum.
- I _____ read and write when I was five.

4 Complete the conversation with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

Alice: How ⁰ *was* (be) your holiday?

Jack: Great! I really ¹ _____ (enjoy) it!

Alice: ² _____ you _____ (go) camping?

Jack: No, we ³ _____ (stay) in a hotel.

Alice: What ⁴ _____ you _____ (do) every day?

Jack: In the morning, we ⁵ _____ (swim) in the sea. The beach ⁶ _____ (be) very near. In the afternoon, we ⁷ _____ (visit) different places.

Alice: Cool! Where ⁸ _____ you _____ (eat)?

Jack: We ⁹ _____ (have) breakfast and dinner in the hotel. I ¹⁰ _____ (take) a lot of photos.

Alice: Can I see them?

Jack: Yes, of course.

UNIT 8

SOMEONE, ANYONE, ETC.

	every	some-	any-	no-
Person	everyone	someone	anyone	no one
Thing	everything	something	anything	nothing
Place	everywhere	somewhere	anywhere	nowhere

- We normally use **everyone**, **everything**, etc. and **someone**, **something**, etc. in positive sentences.
Everyone is at the party.
There's something to drink on the table.
- We use **anyone**, **anything**, etc. and **no one**, **nothing**, etc. in negative sentences and questions.
I haven't got anywhere to sit.
Is no one in the classroom?
- We use **no one**, **nothing** and **nowhere** in sentences with a positive verb. We use **anyone**, **anything** and **anywhere** in sentences with a negative verb.
- Negative verbs with **anyone**, **anything** etc. mean the same as positive verbs with **no one**, **nothing**, etc.
I haven't got anything to do. *I've got nothing to do.*
There isn't anyone at home. *There's no one at home.*
- No one**, **nothing**, etc. mean **not anyone**, **not anything**, etc. so we don't use a negative verb with these words.
I've got nothing to drink. (not I haven't got nothing ...)
There's nowhere to sit. (not There isn't nowhere ...)

Practice

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- I'm bored. I haven't got *anyone / anything / anywhere* to do.
- I went to the new shop in the town, but I bought *no one / nothing / nowhere*.
- Do you have *everyone / everything / everywhere* in your bag?
- Are you busy? I'm looking for *someone / something / somewhere* to walk home with me.
- Where are your friends? There's *no one / nothing / nowhere* in the classroom.
- They decided to go *someone / something / somewhere* near a beach for their holiday.

2 Complete the sentences with **every-**, **some-**, **any-** or **no-**.

- Your room's very tidy. There's *nothing* on the floor.
- I'm leaving because there isn't _____ where for me to sit.
- There isn't _____ one in my class who speaks German.
- _____ one in my school studies English.
- Was there _____ thing good on TV last night?
- My favourite place is _____ where I can play football with my friends.

3 Complete the conversations with the words in the box.

anything anywhere everyone
no one nothing someone
something somewhere

- Anna:** Are you hungry?
Matt: No, I ate *something* a few minutes ago.
- Charlie:** What's that noise? I think there's _____ outside the window.
Jon: No, it's the trees. There's _____ there.
- Lizzie:** Did you go _____ special yesterday?
Martha: Yes, we went _____ near the lake and we had a picnic.
- Paul:** Are you doing _____, Jack?
Jack: No, _____. Why?
- Greg:** Have you got drinks for the party?
Alberto: Yes, I bought some cola. _____ likes cola.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE

UNIT 9

PRONOUNS AND DETERMINERS

	Determiner	Pronoun
I	It's my jumper.	It's mine .
you	It's your cap.	It's yours .
he	It's his jacket.	It's his .
she	It's her swimming costume.	It's hers .
it	It's its shoe.	—
we	They're our clothes.	They're ours .
you	They're your socks.	They're yours .
they	They're their trousers.	They're theirs .

- We use the determiners *my, your, his*, etc. with nouns to talk about our possessions.
That's my tie.
Is this your scarf?
- We use the pronouns *mine, yours, his*, etc. so we don't need to repeat the noun.
Is this your scarf? Yes, it's mine. (not Yes, it's my scarf.)
Are these your trainers? Yes, they're ours. (not Yes, they're our trainers.)
- Mine* is always singular.
Who do these trainers belong to? They're mine. (not mines)
- There is no pronoun form for *its*.

Practice

- 1** Complete the sentences with the correct determiner (*my, your, his*, etc.).

- I love watching films. _____ favourite actor is Johnny Depp.
- One of my uncles lives in New York. _____ name is David.
- That isn't my parents' car. _____ car is blue.
- 'Is this Maria's?' 'No, _____ jacket is red.'
- We haven't got a big dog. _____ dog is very small.
- Can I borrow _____ rubber, please? I haven't got one.

- 2** Choose the correct words.

- You haven't got John's cap. *His / Hers* is black.
- I haven't got a pencil. Can I borrow *mine / yours*?
- Are these your books? No, they aren't *yours / mine*. They belong to Harry and Nick.
- Ana's looking for her shoes. Are these *hers / theirs*?
- You're wearing Nick's jumper. Where's *his / yours*?
- Shall we buy a new tent? *Ours / Its* is very old.

- 3** Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

his mine my our theirs
your yours yours

Steve: I tidied the house this morning. All ¹ _____ clothes were everywhere. Are these shorts ² _____?

Laura: No, they aren't. They're Dan's.

Steve: And these green socks? Are they ³ _____ too?

Laura: No, they're ⁴ _____. The white socks are Dan's.

Steve: Right. I like ⁵ _____ socks, Laura!

Laura: ⁶ _____ grandma gave them to me!

Steve: Whose blue jumper is this?

Laura: It's ⁷ _____! You've got a blue jumper, haven't you!

Steve: You're right! Dan and Lucy have got red trousers. Are these ⁸ _____?

Laura: Yes, they are.

UNIT 10

SOME, ANY, A LOT OF, A FEW, A BIT OF

	Countable	Uncountable
Questions	Are there any shops near your house?	Have you got any money?
Positive	There are some shops over there.	There's some money on the table.
Negative	There aren't any large shops near my house.	I haven't got any money in my purse.
a lot of	My sister's got a lot of earrings.	My mum's got a lot of jewellery.
a few / a bit of	There are a few books on the table.	There's a bit of make-up in the bathroom.

- Countable nouns are nouns for things that we can count. We can use *a/an, the* or a number before them and they can be used in both the singular and the plural.
I bought a leather wallet and two caps in the new shop.
- Uncountable nouns are nouns for things that we can't count. We can't use *a/an* or a number before them and we can't use them in the plural.
My cousin bought some jewellery and some make-up. (not a jewellery, a make-up)

Practice

1 Complete the table with the words in the box.

biscuit cheese earring egg jacket
jewellery juice make-up milk money
photo purse T-shirt wallet

Countable	Uncountable
biscuit	cheese

2 Complete the sentences with *some* or *any*.

- I didn't buy a new wallet because I didn't have _____ money.
- There are _____ new students in my class.
- Were there _____ blue T-shirts in the shop?
- Let's go shopping. I want to buy _____ new clothes.
- That shop hasn't got _____ bread.
- Did you eat _____ cake on your birthday?

3 Complete the sentences with *a lot of*, *a few* or *a bit of*.

- Sally's got *a bit of* jewellery but not much.
- We've got _____ biscuits. There are three packets here and four packets on that shelf.
- We did well in our test and our teacher only gave us _____ homework – just one exercise.
- I've got _____ good friends – Anna, Karen and Rachel.
- We made sandwiches, pizza, a salad and cakes. There was _____ food at my party!
- The trip is for three days. You only need _____ pairs of socks, not 12 pairs!

4 Choose the correct words to complete the conversation.

- James:** Did you buy ¹*a / any* clothes in the sales?
- Holly:** Yes, I bought ²*any / some* sunglasses, ³*a / some* baseball cap and ⁴*a few / a bit of* make-up.
- James:** Really! You bought a ⁵*lot / few* of things. I only bought ⁶*a / some* wallet.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE

UNIT 11 AS ... AS

When we compare two things:

- we can use **as + adjective + as** to say the things are the same.
*In my school, pizza is **as popular as** burgers. (not **as popular than** ...)*
- we can use **not as + adjective + as** to say two things are different.
*Chocolate cake **isn't as healthy as** fruit salad.*
- The form of the adjective doesn't change with **as + adjective + as**.
*A burger **isn't as big as** a pizza. (not **as bigger as** ...)*

Practice

1 Complete the sentences with **as ... as**.

- I'm short, but my sister is very short.
I'm not **as short as my sister**.
- The Burger Bar is popular. The Pizza Restaurant is popular too.
The Burger Bar is _____.
- Ireland is wet. Scotland is wet too.
Ireland is _____.
- Lemonade is sweet, but cola is really sweet.
Lemonade isn't _____.
- Your shorts are quite dirty, but your T-shirt is very dirty.
Your shorts aren't _____.
- My mum's pizza is good. The pizza at Harry's Café is good too.
My mum's pizza is _____.

COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES

Adjective	Comparative
One syllable	
slow →	slower
Two syllables with consonant + -y	
healthy →	healthier
Two syllables or more	
beautiful →	more beautiful
Irregular	
good →	better
bad →	worse
far →	farther/further

- We use comparative adjectives to compare two things (see *Spelling*).
*Water is **usually cheaper than** cola.*
- We usually use **than** after comparative adjectives.
*Vegetables are **healthier than** biscuits.*

Spelling

- **One-syllable adjectives:**
 - mostly add **-er**.
small → smaller, cheap → cheaper
 - One-syllable adjectives ending in **-e**, add **-r**.
nice → nicer, late → later
 - One-syllable adjectives ending in consonant + vowel + consonant (except **w, x** or **y**), double the consonant and add **-er**.
big → bigger, fat → fatter
- **Two-syllable adjectives** ending in consonant + **-y** change the **-y** to **-i** and add **-er**.
busy → busier, happy → happier
- **Two or more syllables** add **more**.
expensive → more expensive

Practice

2 Complete the sentences with the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets.

- My maths teacher is _____ (young) than my geography teacher.
- I think playing football is _____ (interesting) than watching it.
- Exercise 2 is _____ (easy) than Exercise 3.
- My house is _____ (far) from school than yours.
- A mango is _____ (big) than a strawberry.

3 Write complete sentences. Use the comparative form of the adjectives in the box.

expensive fast good hot

- The blue T-shirt is £10. The red T-shirt is £15.
The red T-shirt is **more expensive than the blue T-shirt**.
- It's 2 hours by train. It's 2 hours 45 minutes by bus.
The train is _____.
- It's 25°C in London today. It's 33°C in Istanbul.
Istanbul is _____.
- The pizza wasn't bad. The burger was very bad.
The pizza was _____.

UNIT 12

SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 11, COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES, PAGE 148

Adjective	Superlative
One syllable	
young →	the youngest
Two syllables with consonant + -y	
heavy →	the heaviest
Two syllables or more	
famous →	the most famous
Irregular	
good →	the best
bad →	the worst
far →	the farthest / furthest

- We use superlative adjectives to compare one thing with two or more other things.
The Hopper computer is one of the fastest in the world.
- We use **the** before the superlative adjective.
This is the smallest smartphone anywhere in the world.
- We usually use **in** to talk about a place with the superlative adjective.
This is the most expensive laptop in the world / in my city / in my town, etc. (not of the world)

Spelling

SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 11, COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES, SPELLING, PAGE 148

- The spelling rules for superlative and comparative adjectives are the same.
- One-syllable adjectives:**
 - mostly add -est.
small → smallest, cheap → cheapest
 - One-syllable adjectives ending in -e, add -st.
nice → nicest, late → latest
 - One-syllable adjectives ending in consonant + vowel + consonant (except w, x or y), double the consonant and add -est.
big → biggest, fat → fattest
 - Two-syllable adjectives** ending in consonant + -y change the -y to -i and add -est.
busy → busiest, happy → happiest
 - Adjectives of two or more syllables** add **most**.
expensive → most expensive

Practice

- Write the comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives.

0 slow <i>slower, the slowest</i>	6 beautiful
1 near	7 good
2 large	8 bad
3 thin	9 far
4 friendly	
5 happy	
- Complete the sentences with the superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.
 - My sister's got _____ (long) hair in my school.
 - Cristiano Ronaldo is one of _____ (famous) football players in the world.
 - You can eat _____ (good) burgers in my town in Ray's Burger Bar.
 - Mrs Peters is _____ (friendly) teacher in my school.
 - My house has got _____ (big) garden in my street.
 - Last night we watched _____ (funny) video online. I laughed a lot!
- Write sentences using superlative adjectives.
 - The supermarket / busy shop / my town
The supermarket is the busiest shop in my town.
 - My sister / fast person / our school
 - Russia / large country / world
 - Salad / healthy food / this café
 - I / bad singer / my class
 - My brother / good player / his team
- Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
 - I think history is *more* / *the most* interesting than science.
 - Travelling by plane is *faster* / *the fastest* than travelling by bus.
 - Oranges are *healthier* / *the healthiest* food in the cupboard.
 - Jonny bought *better* / *the best* smartphone in the shop.
 - A printer is *more* / *the most* expensive than a mouse.
 - The Torre de Cristal is *taller* / *the tallest* building in Spain.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE

UNIT 13

SHOULD / SHOULDN'T

Positive

I/You/He/She/It/We/They **should** go to bed earlier.

Negative

I/You/He/She/It/We/They **shouldn't** (should not) play tennis.

Questions

What **should** I/you/he/she/it/we/they do?

Should I/you/he/she/it/we/they stop doing sports?

Short answer

Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/they **should**.

No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they **shouldn't**.

- We use **should** and **shouldn't** to give advice.
*I've got a headache. You **should** take some medicine.*
*You **shouldn't** listen to loud music.*
- We use **should** to say something is a **good idea**.
*My hand hurts. You **should** go to the doctor.*
- We use **shouldn't** to say something is a **bad idea**.
*I feel sick. You **shouldn't** eat anything.*
- After **should** and **shouldn't**, we use the infinitive of the verb without **to**.
*My leg hurts. You **should** rest and you **shouldn't** walk.*
*(not you **should** to rest ... you **shouldn't** to walk)*

Practice

1 Complete the sentences with **should** or **shouldn't**.

- John's got a temperature. He _____ go to school.
- I hurt my foot. The doctor says I _____ play football for three weeks.
- My best friend didn't pass the exam. His teacher thinks he _____ study harder.
- Did you say your back hurts? You _____ go swimming. It's very good for you.
- My sister lost her smartphone yesterday. I think she _____ talk to the police.
- To enter a race, you _____ do exercise the day before the race.

2 Write complete sentences with **should** or **shouldn't** and the words in the box.

do sport and exercise
drink a lot of cola and lemonade
eat a lot of sweets and chocolate
eat healthy food
sleep well
watch a lot of TV

If you want to keep fit and healthy, ...

0 you should do sport and exercise.

- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

3 Write complete questions with **should**. Then write short answers.

0 I / do the race? (✓)

Should I do the race?

Yes, you should.

1 my brother / buy a fast car? (X)

2 my friends / go to bed earlier? (✓)

3 we / have a party? (X)

4 I / stay at home? (X)

4 Read the examples and write some advice with **should** or **shouldn't**.

0 I don't feel well. What should I do?

You should go to bed and lie down.

1 It's my mum's birthday next week. What should I buy her?

2 I've got an exam tomorrow. Should I study all night?

3 I want to visit another country. Where should I go?

4 My brother wants to do a new sport. Which one should he do?

5 I want to make some new friends. Should I join a club?

UNIT 14 PREPOSITIONS

We can use **prepositions** to say where things are.

A river goes *through* the town.

Three bridges go *across* the river.

The post office is *next to* the train station.

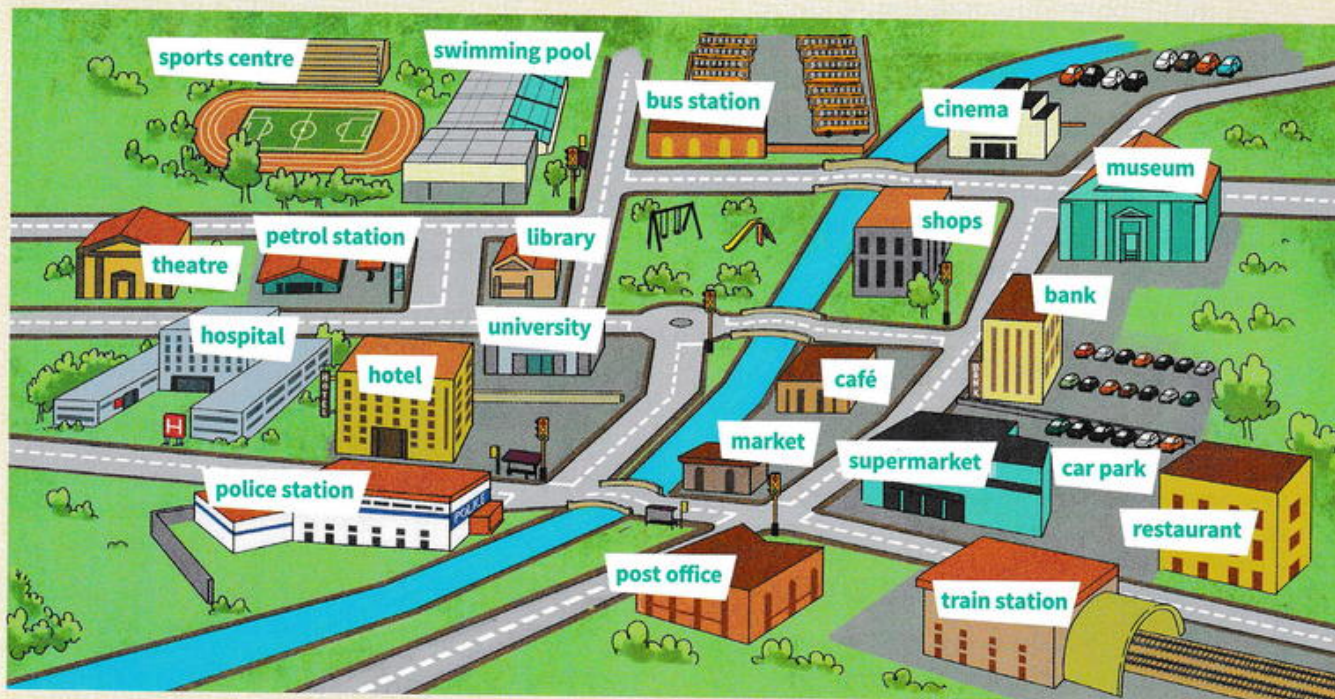
The train station is *beside* the post office.

The car park is *in front of* the supermarket.

The petrol station is *opposite* the library.

The restaurant is *near* the train station.

The hospital is *outside* the town.



Practice

1 Look at the map of the town. Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- The swimming pool is *near* / *across* the bus station.
- To get to the train station, walk *across* / *through* the bridge.
- The university is *opposite* / *next to* the library.
- The petrol station is *beside* / *near* the university.
- The cinema is *opposite* / *next to* the river.
- There's a car park *in front of* / *through* the supermarket.

2 Look at the map again and complete the sentences with the words in the box. Use each word once only.

across near next to opposite outside through

- A river goes *through* the town.
- _____* the town, there's a hospital.
- Drive *_____* the bridge and there's a cinema on your left.
- There's a roundabout *_____* the middle bridge.
- The park is *_____* the police station.
- The market is *_____* the hotel.

3 Read the questions and write true sentences about your town.

- Where's your school?
- Is the hospital outside your town?
- What's your favourite shop? Where is it?
- Does a river go through your town?
- How often do you walk across a bridge?
- Is there a museum in your town? Where is it?

It's near my house, opposite the park.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE

UNIT 15

PAST CONTINUOUS

Positive	I/He/She/It was eating dinner. You/We/They were playing football.
Negative	I/He/She/It wasn't (was not) sleeping . You/We/They weren't (were not) helping .
Questions	What was I/he/she/it doing at 8 am? What were you/we/they watching on TV? Was I/he/she/it playing computer games? Were you/we/they listening to music?
Short answers	Yes, I/he/she/it was . No, he/she/it wasn't . Yes, you/we/they were . No, you/we/they weren't .

We use the **past continuous** to talk about activities happening at a moment in the past.

*I **was watching** TV, my parents **were working** and my brother **was playing** football yesterday afternoon.*

SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 2, SPELLING: **-ING FORM**, PAGE 139

Practice

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- At 6 pm, I *was doing* / *were doing* my homework.
- My dad *was cooking* / *were cooking* our dinner.
- Yesterday afternoon, we *wasn't playing* / *weren't playing* tennis.
- Yesterday afternoon, you *wasn't wearing* / *weren't wearing* your new cap.
- My friends *wasn't having* / *weren't having* lunch at 1 pm.
- We *was climbing* / *were climbing* a tree on Saturday morning.

2 Complete the paragraph with the past continuous form of the verbs in the box.

cry listen make not sleep not watch
rain read sit surf

This morning, my dad ⁰*was making* breakfast. The baby was hungry and he ¹_____. My big sister was in her bedroom. She ²_____; she ³_____ a magazine. My mum and my older brother ⁴_____ the internet. My little sister ⁵_____ in her favourite chair, but she ⁶_____ TV. My younger brother ⁷_____ to loud music. There were clouds in the sky and it ⁸_____. I decided to stay at home.

3 Write complete questions in the past continuous. Then write short answers.

At 10 am yesterday,

0 it / snow? (X)

Was it snowing?

No it wasn't.

1 your friends / ride their bikes? (✓)

2 you / shop with your friends? (✓)

3 your mum / work? (X)

4 I / have a shower? (X)

5 you and your friends / swim in the lake? (✓)

4 Put the words in order to make questions. Then write answers that are true for you.

0 yesterday at 11 am / you / were / sleeping / ?

Were you sleeping yesterday at 11 am?

No, I wasn't. I was studying at school.

1 were / doing / you / at 8 am this morning / what / ?

2 blue socks / you / were / wearing / yesterday / ?

3 after school yesterday / watching / a film / were / you and your friends / ?

4 raining / was / it / yesterday evening / ?

5 on Saturday morning / what / your friends / doing / were / ?

UNIT 16

PAST SIMPLE AND PAST CONTINUOUS

» SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNITS 5–7, PAST SIMPLE, PAGES 142–144

» SEE GRAMMAR REFERENCE, UNIT 15, PAST CONTINUOUS, PAGE 152

- We use the **past continuous** to describe activities happening at a particular moment in the past. Sometimes these activities happen at the same time. We don't use the past continuous to talk about the beginning or the end of an activity.

John was looking at the elephants and his sister was buying an ice cream.

- We use the **past simple** when one complete action follows another.

I woke up and I went downstairs.

- We often use the **past simple** and **past continuous** together to say that one action interrupts another.

A elephant was eating some fruit when the boy fell.

when and while

We use **when** and **while** to connect two activities. When we use the **past simple** and **past continuous** together, we often use:

- when** before the past simple.
The boy was looking at the elephants when he fell.
Or
When the boy fell, he was looking at the elephants.
- while** before the past continuous.
The boy fell while he was looking at the elephants.
Or
While the boy was looking at the elephants, he fell.

Practice

- 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- When the teacher *came / was coming* into the classroom, we *played / were playing* cards.
- She *didn't call / wasn't calling* me when she *heard / was hearing* a strange noise.
- While I *got off / was getting off* the bus, it *started / was starting* to rain.
- John *arrived / was arriving* while my sister *made / was making* breakfast.
- My brother *climb / was climbing* a tree when he *fell / was falling*.
- I *didn't meet / wasn't meeting* my teacher while we *shopped / were shopping*.

- 2 Complete the sentences with **when** or **while**.

- I was giving food to my rabbit _____ you phoned me.
- We found some money _____ we were playing football outside.
- I wasn't doing anything _____ you turned on the light.
- _____ you sent me the message, I was doing an exam.
- My mum was watching the monkeys _____ someone stole her purse.
- _____ my friends were snowboarding, they saw a famous musician.

- 3 Complete the sentences with one verb in the past simple and one verb in the past continuous.

- My teacher _____ (travel) by boat when she _____ (feel) sick.
- When the music _____ (start), I _____ (not talk) to my friends.
- While I _____ (carry) the plates, I _____ (fall).
- We _____ (run) in the park when we _____ (see) some ducks.
- While I _____ (do) my homework, my phone _____ (ring).
- We _____ (not visit) the British Museum while we _____ (stay) in London.

- 4 Complete the sentences so they are true for you. Use the past simple or the past continuous.

- When I woke up yesterday, _____
it was raining.
- When I got to school, my friends _____
- The teacher came into the classroom while _____
- When I arrived home, I _____
- While I was doing my homework, _____

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE

UNIT 17

FUTURE WITH GOING TO

- We form the *going to* future with *be + going to + infinitive without to*.

Positive	I'm (am) going to phone our friends. You/We/They're (are) going to invite all our family. He/She/It's (is) going to watch the animals.
Negative	I'm (am) not going to do any homework. You/We/They aren't (are not) going to buy pizza. He/She/It isn't (is not) going to win the prize.
Questions	Who am I going to see? What are you/we/they going to do later? Where is he/she/it going to go? Am I going to have fun? Are you/we/they going to phone me later? Is he/she/it going to tell Mum and Dad?
Short answers	Yes, I am. No, I'm not. Yes, you/we/they are. No, you/we/they aren't. Yes, he/she/it is. No, he/she/it isn't.

- We use the *going to* future to talk about our future plans.
I'm going to watch the concert this evening.
We aren't going to study next weekend.
- We usually make our future plans before we use the '*going to*' future.
Where are you going to go next summer?
Mum bought the tickets last week. We're going to visit Paris and Berlin.
- We often use future time phrases like *this evening*, *tomorrow morning*, *next summer*, *when I'm 18*, etc. with the *going to* future.
I'm going to travel when I'm 18.
My dad isn't going to drive us to school tomorrow morning.

Practice

- 1 Write complete sentences with the *going to* future form of the verbs.

0 I / buy / new trainers.

I'm going to buy new trainers.

1 We / not ride / our bikes to school tomorrow.

2 My friends / watch / the talent show on TV.

3 My mum / not play / tennis later.

4 My dad / make / pizza.

5 My cousins / not visit / us next weekend.

- 2 Complete the paragraph with the *going to* future form of the verbs in the box.

buy fly not go not serve
stay travel watch work

Next summer, I ⁰ *'m going to fly* to Canada with my family. We ¹ _____ with our friends. I ² _____ a football shirt for my friend Jack because he likes sport. We ³ _____ a football match with him. I love travelling. When I'm 18, I ⁴ _____ to university. I ⁵ _____ around the world. I ⁶ _____ in a shop in different countries but I ⁷ _____ food in a restaurant. That's hard work!

- 3 Complete the questions with the *going to* future form of the verbs in brackets.

1 What _____ you and your friends _____ (watch) on TV after school today?

2 What _____ you _____ (wear) tomorrow?

3 _____ your mum _____ (work) next Saturday?

4 Who _____ you and your family _____ (see) at the weekend?

5 _____ your friends _____ (travel) to another country next summer?

6 _____ you _____ (study) in another town when you're 18?

- 4 Write true answers to the questions in Exercise 3.

0 *We're going to ride our bikes*

1 _____
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____

UNIT 18 MAKING SUGGESTIONS

- A **suggestion** is a plan or an idea that you want someone to think about.
Why don't we go to the concert?
Shall we meet outside the cinema?
Why not ask your mum to drive us?
Let's go to a restaurant later.
- After *Why don't we ...*, *Shall we ...*, *Why not ...* and *Let's ...*, we use an infinitive without *to*.
Shall we make a cake? (not *Shall we to make...*)
Why don't we buy some lemonade? (not *Why don't we to buy...*)
- *Why don't we ...*, *Shall we ...* and *Why not ...* are questions so we use a question mark (?).
Shall we meet at 8 pm?
Why not go by bus?
- *Let's ...* is a sentence so we use a full stop (.).
Let's go to the football match.
- When someone makes a suggestion, we often use words and phrases like *Cool!*, *Sounds good!*, *You're right!*, *Good one!* and *Excellent idea!* to answer.
Let's go swimming. Cool!

Practice

1 Choose the correct words to complete the suggestions.

- 1 Let's *use / to use* that computer over there.
- 2 *Shall we / We shall* include some cartoons in the magazine?
- 3 *Let's / Why not* ask our teacher to help.
- 4 *Why not / Shall we* play hockey?
- 5 *Let's / Why not* write down our ideas first?
- 6 *Why don't we / Why we don't* put a notice on the website?

2 Write suggestions using *Shall ...*, *Why don't we / Why not ...* or *Let's ...* and the words in the box.

have listen read ride take watch

- 0 *Why not listen* to music?
- 1 _____ the film on TV.
- 2 _____ we _____ pizza for dinner?
- 3 _____ our bikes to school tomorrow?
- 4 _____ the book before we see the film.
- 5 _____ we _____ some photos in the museum?

3 Read the sentences, then write a suggestion using *Shall ...*, *Why don't we / Why not ...* or *Let's ...*

- 1 It's my birthday tomorrow.
_____.
- 2 We haven't got any homework to do today.
_____.
- 3 The school holidays start next week.
_____.
- 4 I'm bored and it's raining.
_____.
- 5 I'm hungry and there isn't anything to eat.
_____.
- 6 We have to do something for the school magazine.
_____.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE AND PRACTICE

UNIT 19

HAVE TO / DON'T HAVE TO

Positive	I/You/We/They have to get up early. He/She/It has to eat later.
Negative	I/You/We/They don't have to go climbing. He/She/It doesn't have to wear a uniform.
Questions	What do I/you/we/they have to do now? What time does he/she/it have to get up? Do I/you/we/they have to bring snacks? Does he/she/it have to wear nice clothes?
Short answers	Yes, I/you/we/they do . No, I/you/we/they don't . Yes, he/she/it does . No, he/she/it doesn't .

- We use **have to** to say something is necessary.
*I can't go out. I **have to** help my mum.*
*We **have to** be at school at 8 am for the school trip.*
- We use **don't have to** to say something is not necessary.
*It's Saturday. You **don't have to** get up early.* (But you can if you want.)
*My cousins **don't have to** wear a uniform at their school.*
have to means you have no choice. You can't say 'no'!
don't have to means you can do something if you want.

Practice

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- You *have to* get fit / *has to* get fit to enter a race.
- My school is opposite my house. I *don't have to* go / *doesn't have to* go by bus.
- We *have to* leave / *has to* leave our phones at home.
- You *have to* wear / *has to* wear trainers for a nature walk.
- My dad *don't have to* wear / *doesn't have to* wear a suit at work.
- You *don't have to* make / *doesn't have to* make breakfast. I can do it.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of **have to** and the verbs in the box.

do not bring not buy
not help stay tidy

- Every morning, I *have to* tidy my bedroom.
- You _____ any milk. There's a lot in the fridge.
- My friends are lucky. They _____ at home.
- We _____ a vocabulary test every week at school.
- My brother is ill. He _____ in bed today.
- You _____ anything on the school trip. I've got a lot of food and drink.

3 Write complete questions with **have to**. Then write short answers.

- you / study hard at your school? (✓)
Do you have to study hard at your school?
Yes I do.
- your mum / work five days a week at the museum? (X)

- you / turn off your smartphone at school? (✓)

- your dad / travel for his work? (X)

- we / do Exercise 5? (X)

- your friends / make their beds? (✓)

4 Complete the questions with the correct form of **have to** and the verbs in brackets. Then write answers that are true for you.

- Do* you *have to* go (go) to bed early on Saturday night?
No I don't.
- What time _____ you _____ (get up) on a school day?

- _____ you _____ (speak) English in your English class?

- How much homework _____ you and your classmates _____ (do) every day?

- What _____ you _____ (do) if you miss a class?

- _____ you _____ (buy) a ticket before you get on a bus in your town?

- We use **adverbs of manner** to say **how** we do something.
*You have to speak **quietly** here.*
*My sister can play the piano **beautifully**.*
- We make many adverbs of manner by adding **-ly** to the adjective (see Spelling below).
*My little brother is **noisy**. He does everything **noisily**.*
*I'm very **careful**. I always do my homework **carefully**.*
- There are some irregular adverbs.
good → well, fast → fast, hard → hard

Spelling: adverbs of manner

Most adverbs add **-ly** to the adjective.

quick → quickly

For adjectives ending in **-l**, we double the **l** and add **-y** in the adverb form.

beautiful → beautifully

For adjectives ending in a consonant + **-y**, we remove the **-y** and add **-ily**.

easy → easily

Practice

1 Write the adverb form of the adjectives.

0 slow slowly
1 careful _____
2 good _____
3 happy _____

4 quiet _____
5 wonderful _____
6 heavy _____
7 hard _____

8 bad _____
9 angry _____
10 fast _____
11 noisy _____

2 Complete the sentences with the adverb form of the adjectives in the box. Use each word once only.

bad careful good hard ~~loud~~ quick

- 0 I can't hear you. The band is playing very loudly.
1 If you want to pass the exam, you have to study _____.
2 My brother won the race because he ran very _____.
3 Please don't ask me to draw a picture. I draw _____.
4 Listen _____! I'm going to repeat these instructions.
5 Let's have dinner at your house. Your dad cooks really _____.

3 Complete the questions with the adverb form of the adjectives in brackets. Then write answers that are true for you.

- 0 Which famous musicians sing beautifully (beautiful)?
I think Taylor Swift sings beautifully.
1 How many languages can you speak _____ (good)?
2 How often do you do your homework _____ (slow) and _____ (careful)?
3 Do you eat _____ (quick)?
4 How far is your school from your house? Can you walk there _____ (easy)?
5 Do you play in a sports team? Does it play _____ (bad) or _____ (good)?

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

Infinitive	Past simple
be	was, were
become	became
begin	began
break	broke
bring	brought
build	built
burn	burned/burnt
buy	bought
catch	caught
choose	chose
come	came
cost	cost
cut	cut
do	did
draw	drew
dream	dreamed/dreamt
drink	drank
drive	drove
eat	ate
fall	fell
feel	felt
find	found
fly	flew
forget	forgot
get	got
give	gave
go	went
grow	grew
have	had
hear	heard
hit	hit
hold	held
hurt	hurt
keep	kept
know	knew
learn	learned/learnt
leave	left

Infinitive	Past simple
lend	lent
lie	lay
lose	lost
make	made
mean	meant
meet	met
pay	paid
put	put
read	read
ride	rode
ring	rang
run	ran
say	said
see	saw
sell	sold
send	sent
show	showed
shut	shut
sing	sang
sit	sat
sleep	slept
speak	spoke
spell	spelled/spelt
spend	spent
stand	stood
steal	stole
swim	swam
take	took
teach	taught
tell	told
think	thought
throw	threw
understand	understood
wake	woke
wear	wore
win	won
write	wrote

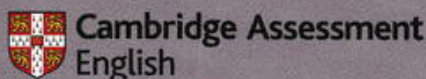
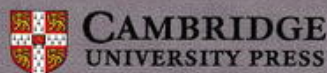
PREPARE

Where English meets Exams

Prepare Second Edition levels 2 & 3 combine teen-appeal topics with extensive preparation for the revised 2020 A2 Key for Schools exam.

- Enjoy interactive, personalised lessons with themes and resources relevant to school-aged learners
- Relax knowing Prepare's unique Exam Journey drives students to exam success
- Create confident English users with our enhanced vocabulary and grammar syllabus
- Inspire learners to expand their horizons and knowledge exploring Prepare's Life Skills and Culture sections
- Support and extend learning through the new collection of online resources

Cambridge English Scale	PREPARE Level	Cambridge English Qualification
160-179	7	B2 First for Schools
	6	
140-159	5	B1 Preliminary for Schools
	4	
120-139	3	A2 Key for Schools
	2	
100-119	1	



Official
Cambridge
Exam
Preparation

Experts together

Our aim is to deliver the materials you tell us you need. Exclusive insights from test development and candidate performance guarantee expert content. The result is a unique Exam Journey in each course, ensuring every student is ready on exam day. From skills development to exam tasks, language discovery to real-world usage, we create better learning experiences, together.

Experience

**Better
Learning**

ISBN 978-1-108-43328-0



9 781108 433280 >